

Chemical Publishing Company
chemical-publishing.com

The following pages contain the table of contents,
index and first few sample pages of this title
[Click here to purchase this title](#)
or to visit the product page.

Harry's Cosmeticology

Eighth Edition

Edited by Martin M. Reiger, Ph.D.



Chemical Publishing Co., Inc.

Chemical Publishing Co., Inc., 743 Western Avenue, Gloucester, MA 01930
www.chemical-publishing.com
www.chemicalpublishing.net

© 2000, by Chemical Publishing Co., Inc.
All rights reserved. 8th edition, 2000

This book is protected by copyright. No part of it may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means; electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN 0-8206-0372-4

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Harry, Ralph Gordon, 1908-

[Cosmeticology]

Harry's cosmeticology-8th ed. Volume 1/edited by Martin M. Rieger.
p.cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-8206-0372-4

1. Cosmetics. I. Title: Cosmeticology. II. Rieger, Martin, M., 1920- III. Title.

TP983 H32 2000

668'.55-dc21

00-035900

Made in the United States of America

Contents

Foreword	vii
List of Contributors by Chapter	x
Alphabetical List of Contributors	xi
Chapter Contributors	xiii

PART ONE: THE SUBSTRATES 1

1 Skin	3
2 The Hair	39
3 The Nails	71
4 Anatomy and Physiology of Ocular Tissue	79
5 The Mouth and Oral Care	87

PART TWO: FORMULATION APPROACHES AND REQUIREMENTS 109

6 Fundamentals of Cosmetic Product Development: Getting Started	111
7 Regulatory Requirements for Cosmetic Products	129
8 Intellectual Property Issues: Patents and Trade Secrets	175

PART THREE: COMMON INGREDIENTS AND PROCESSES 185

9 Surfactants	187
10 Cosmetic Emulsification	211
11 Rheological Additives	235
12 Antioxidants	247
13 Moisturizers and Humectants	261
14 Preservation	273
15 Use of Botanicals in Cosmetics	305

16 Specialty Lipids	323
17 Aerosol Technology	333

PART FOUR: FORMULATION AND PERFORMANCE 349

18 Skin Care Products	351
19 Miscellaneous Skin Care Products: Skin Bleaches and Others	393
20 Sunscreens	415
21 Antiperspirants and Deodorants	437
22 Antiacne and Oily Skin Products	459
23 Face, Body and Hair Masks and Scrubs	471
24 Skin Cleansing Products	485
25 Shaving Preparations	501
26 Color Cosmetics	523
27 Nail Polishes	573
28 Specialty Nail Products	589
29 Shampoos	601
30 Hair Setting Products	635
31 Hair Colorants	669
32 Permanent Waving, Hair Straightening and Depilatories	695
33 Oral Care Products	725
34 Safety and Performance	755

PART FIVE: PRODUCTION 785

35 The Manufacture of Cosmetics	787
36 Packaging	875
37 Stability	889

Index	901
-------	-----

Foreword

Since its first edition *Harry's Cosmeticology* has been a highly respected text for cosmetic scientists and others concerned with skin, hair, and nail health and appearance. This, the eighth edition, continues this tradition, although the current and ever-changing status of the cosmetic industry has created the need for extensive changes. The driving forces for this required updating to include the spectacular advances in biology and dermatology as well as the steady progress in formulation technology. These innovations are reflected in this modernized and comprehensive revision of *Harry's*. The editor has attempted to present the rationale for currently practiced product concepts and to provide a scientifically sound basis for future product innovations. One of the major problems for compounders is the need to deal with the names of thousands of trademarked ingredients available for formulation. In this current edition, this complication was avoided by eliminating trade names and replacing them with the internationally accepted INCI terminology.

The use of the *INCI Dictionary* also allowed elimination of almost all chemical structures in this book. The text is deliberately slanted to alert readers to some of the uncertainties in cosmetic formulation. In addition, an effort was made to provide readers with sufficient background to draw their own conclusions about some of the dogmas that have persisted in the industry for years. The book avoids—as much as possible—the hype and pseudoscience that surround the frequently undocumented biological activity of many topically applied cosmetic ingredients. Citations of the original literature intended to substantiate the validity of specific and widely accepted assertions have been routinely eliminated. References were selected to allow further study by interested readers. The listings of recommended reading are intended to provide access to the classic information that forms the foundation of cosmetic science. Complete titles are included to facilitate the reader's selection of pertinent information.

The preparation of this edition of *Harry's* required the participation of many experts who contributed extensively to almost all chapters. The work of these

viii Foreword

contributors is gratefully acknowledged, and their names are listed below. I also wish to acknowledge the help of my wife, Audrey, who contributed unselfishly to the completion of the manuscript. In addition, the guidance provided by the staff of Chemical Publishing Company has been invaluable.

It is my sincere hope that readers and users of this book will find this revision of *Harry's* a valuable resource in their pursuit of innovative cosmetic products in future years.

Martin M. Rieger

List of Contributors by Chapter

1. Glaser, Dee Ann, Amato, Jason B, and Kollias, Nikiforos
2. Weigmann, Hans-Dieter
3. Zaiac, Martin
4. Levy, Brian
5. Harper, Scott
6. Romanovsky, Perry, and Schueller, Randy
7. Murphy, Emalee, and Wilkes, Paul D.
8. Kenney, Dolores
9. Rieger, Martin
10. Rieger, Martin
11. Laba, Dennis
12. Rieger, Martin
13. Rieger, Martin
14. Orth, Donald
15. Dweck, Antony
16. Imokawa, Genji, and Rieger, Martin
17. Bhuta, Mukund
18. Kumano, Yoshimaru, Nishiyama, Seiji, Ozawa, Tatsuya, and Takahashi, Mottoji
19. Akerson, James, and Imokawa, Genji
20. Klein, Kenneth, and Kollias, Nikiforos
21. Abrutyn, Eric
22. Popp, Karl
23. Day, Eva
24. Rieger, Martin
25. Foltis, Peter
26. Hollenberg, Jane

x List of Contributors by Chapter

27. Wimmer, Eric
28. Garlen, David
29. Reich, Charles, and Chupa, Janine
30. Dallal, Joseph A.
31. Anderson, James S.
32. DeGeorge, Michael S.
33. Elton, Craig
34. Draelos, Zoe Diana
35. Buell, Donald S., Barclay, Kenneth W., Block, Patrick, Crissian, Carlos A.,
Junker, Jeffrey, Melenkevitz, Douglas J., Rotando, Jerome L., Van Ael,
Raymond M., Victor, Bruce L., Yacko, David P.
36. Morrison, Richard
37. Rieger, Martin

Alphabetical List of Contributors

Abrutyn, Eric (21)
Akerson, James (19)
Amato, Jason (1)
Anderson, James S. (31)
Barclay, Kenneth (35)
Bhuta, Mukund (17)
Block, Patrick (35)
Buell, Donald (35)
Chupa, Janine (29)
Crissian, Carlos (35)
Dallal, Joseph (30)

Day, Eva (23)
DeGeorge, Michael (32)
Draelos, Zoe Diana (34)

Dweck, Anthony (15)
Elton, Craig (33)
Foltis, Peter (25)
Garlen, David (28)
Glaser, Dee Ann (1)
Harper, Scott (5)
Hollenberg, Jane (26)
Imokawa, Genji (16, 19)
Junker, Jeffrey (35)
Kenney, Dolores (8)
Klein, Kenneth (20)

Andrew Jergens Co.
Akerson Associates
St. Louis University
Bristol-Meyers Squibb Corp.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Cosmair, Inc.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Colgate-Palmolive Co.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
International Specialty
Products, Inc.
One Day PCR
Redken Laboratories, Inc.
Wake Forest University, School
of Medicine
Dweck Data
Cielle, Inc.
Cosmair, Inc.
Cosmetech Labs, Inc.
Saint Louis University
Warner-Lambert Co.
JCH Consulting
Kao Corp.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Olson & Hierl, Ltd.
Cosmetech Labs., Inc.

xii Alphabetical List of Contributors

- Kollias, Nikiforos (1, 20)
Kumano, Yoshimaru (18)
Laba, Dennis (11)
Leaver, Eric (35)
Levy, Brian (4)
Melenkevitz, Douglas (35)
Morrison, Richard (36)
Murphy, Emalee (7)
Nishiyama, Seiji (18)
Orth, Donald (14)
Ozawa, Tatsuya (18)
Popp, Karl (22)
- Reich, Charles (29)
Rieger, Martin (9, 10, 12, 13, 16, 24, 37)
- Romanovsky, Perry (6)
Rotando, Jerome (35)
Schueller, Randy (6)
Takahashi, Mottoji (18)
Van Ael, Raymond (35)
Victor, Bruce (35)
Weigmann, Hans-Dieter (2)
David Yacko (35)
- Massachusetts General Hospital
Shiseido Co., Ltd.
Rheox, Inc.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Bausch and Lomb Co.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
The Summit Group
McKenna and Cuneo, L.L.P.
Shiseido Co., Ltd.
Neutrogena Corp
Shiseido Co., Ltd.
A.C. Stiefel Research Institute, Inc.
Colgate-Palmolive Co.
M & A Rieger Associates
- Alberto-Culver Co.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Alberto-Culver Co.
Shiseido Co., Ltd.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.
Textile Research Institute
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.

Chapter Contributors

Skin	Jason B. Amato Dee Ana Glaser St. Louis University U.S.A. Nikiforos Kollias Massachusetts General Hospital U.S.A.
The Hair	Hans-Dieter Weigmann Textile Research Institute U.S.A.
The Nails	Martin Zaiac Miami, Florida U.S.A.
Anatomy and Physiology of Ocular Tissue	Brian Levy Bausch & Lomb. Co. U.S.A.
The Mouth and Oral Care	Scott Harper Warner-Lambert Co. U.S.A.
Fundamentals of Cosmetic Product Development	Perry Romanowski Randy Schueller Alberto-Culver, Co. U.S.A.
Regulatory Requirements	Emalee Murphy McKenna & Cuneo, L.L.P. U.S.A.

xiv Chapter Contributors

	Paul D. Wilkes The Body Shop England
Patents and Trade Secrets	Dolores Kenney Olson & Hierl, Ltd. U.S.A.
Surfactants	Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates
Cosmetic Emulsification	Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates
Rheological Additives	Dennis Laba Rheox, Inc. U.S.A.
Antioxidants	Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates
Moisturizers and Humectants	Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates
Preservation	Donald Orth The Neutrogena Corporation U.S.A.
Use of Botanicals	Anthony Dweck Dweck Data England
Specialty Lipids	Genji Imokawa Kao Corporation Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates
Aerosol Technology	Mukund Bhuta Cosmair, Inc. U.S.A.
Skin Care Products	Yoshimaru Kumano Seiji Nishiyame Tatsuya Ozawa Takahashi, Mottoji Shiseido Co., Ltd. Japan

	Genji Imokawa Kao Corporation Japan
Miscellaneous Skin Care Products	James Akerson Akerson Associates U.S.A.
Sunscreens	Kenneth Klein Cosmetech Labs., Inc. U.S.A. Nikiforos Kollias Massachusetts General Hospital U.S.A.
Antiperspirants and Deodorants	Eric Andrew Abrutyn Jergens Co. U.S.A.
Antiacne and Oily Skin Products	Karl A.C. Popp Stiefel Research Institute, Inc. U.S.A.
Face, Body, and Hair Masks and Scrubs	Eva Day One Day PCR U.S.A.
Skin Cleansing Products	Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates
Shaving Preparations	Peter Foltis Cosmair Cosmetics Inc. U.S.A.
Color Cosmetics	Jane Hollenberg JCH Consulting U.S.A.
Nail Polishes	David Garlen Cosmetech Labs., Inc. U.S.A.
Specialty Nail Products	Eric Wimmer TEVCO, Inc. U.S.A.

xvi Chapter Contributors

Shampoos	Janine Chupa Charles Reich Colgate-Palmolive U.S.A.
Hair Setting Products	Michael S. De George Redken Laboratories, Inc. U.S.A.
Hair Colorants	James Anderson Bristol-Meyers Squibb Corp., Inc. U.S.A.
Permanent Waving, Hair Straightening, and Depilatories	Joseph A. Dallal International Specialty Products, Inc. U.S.A.
Oral Care Products	Craig Elton Cielle, Inc. U.S.A.
Safety and Performance	Zoe Draelos High Point, North Carolina U.S.A.
Manufacture of Cosmetics	Donald S. Buell Kenneth W. Barclay Patrick Block Carlos A. Crissian Jeffrey Junker Eric J. Leaver Douglas J. Melenkevitz Jerome L. Rotando Raymond M. Van Ael Bruce L. Victor David P. Yacko The Estee Lauder Companies, Inc. U.S.A.
Packaging	Richard Morrison The Summit Group U.S.A.
Stability	Martin M. Rieger M & A Rieger Associates

1. Skin
2. Hair
3. The Nails
4. Anatomy and Physiology of Ocular Tissue
5. The Mouth and Oral Care

PART ONE

The Substrates

The first five chapters in this edition are designed to introduce readers to the physiology and biochemistry of the human tissues to which cosmetics are applied. The emphasis is clearly on skin and hair, the tissues of primary interest to cosmetic scientists. A short description of ocular tissues is included because eyes play an important role in modern decorative cosmetics. Two additional chapters address the various tissues found in the mouth and, finally, the hard keratin of the nail.

CHAPTER 1

Skin

Structure and Function of Human Skin

INTRODUCTION

The skin is the organ that forms the border between the organism and the environment. Skin prevents dehydration, stops the penetration of noxious foreign materials and microorganisms, cushions against mechanical shock, helps to maintain a constant body temperature, and transduces incoming stimuli. In order to perform these functions, skin must be maintained in good condition, an important objective for cosmetic formulators. For cosmetic scientists, whether they are concerned with the improvement of the skin by pharmacology or with the prevention of damage as a result of artifice, an understanding of skin structure and function is essential. The impact of light on skin and on skin aging has become so important in cosmetics that it requires a complete discussion of this subject.

SKIN MORPHOLOGY

The skin is divided into three layers: the epidermis, the dermis, and the subcutaneous tissue. The epidermis is the outermost layer of the skin and is a stratified squamous epithelium. Its thickness varies, depending on location, from 0.05 mm to 1.5 mm. The epidermis is made up primarily of keratinocytes whose basic function is to produce a filamentous protein, keratin, to serve as a protective barrier in combination with various lipid components. These cells also produce several other proteins, for example, cytokines, which play a role in the cutaneous inflammatory response. Separated from the epidermis by the basement membrane, the dermis is composed primarily of the so-called ground substance, which includes glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) and the structural protein collagen. While its thickness also varies with location from 0.3 mm to 3.0 mm, the dermis is divided into two layers: the papillary

4 Harry's Cosmeticology

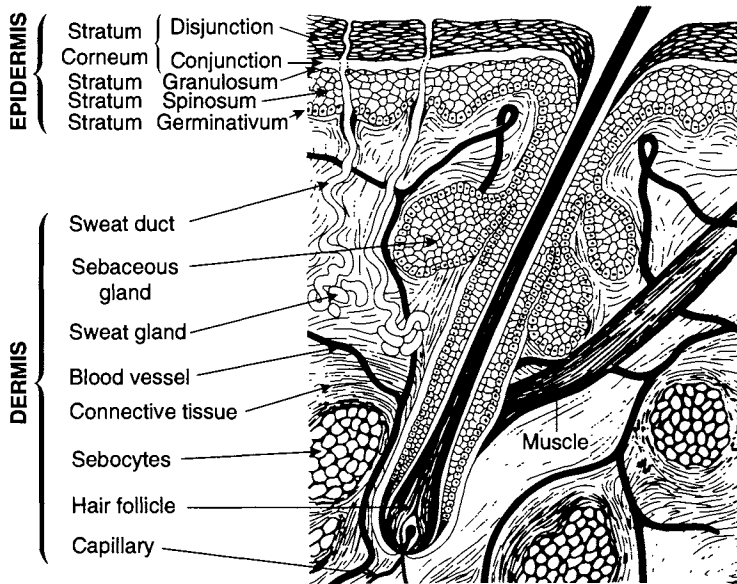


Figure 1.1. Diagram of normal human skin

layer, which interdigitates with the epidermal rete ridges, and the reticular layer, which extends to the subcutaneous tissue. This deepest layer of the skin, also known as the subcutis or hypodermis, is composed primarily of lipocytes (Fig. 1.1).

EPIDERMIS AND THE KERATINIZING SYSTEM

The epidermis consists of a number of layers: the innermost basal layer, the malpighian or prickle layer, the granular layer, and the horny layer or stratum corneum. The stratification is the result of changes in the keratinocytes as they mature and move outward from the basal layer, in which they are continuously formed by the mitosis of self-renewing progenitor cells and are shed on the skin surface. Three other cell types are present: melanocytes, the dendritic pigment-synthesizing cells; Langerhans cells, which are colorless and dendritic in form; and Merkel cells, which are concerned with sensation. The melanocytes and the Merkel cells are confined mainly to the basal layer, while the Langerhans cells are distributed in the basal, spinous, and granular layers.

Dermo-Epidermal Junction

The basement membrane zone forms the junction between the cellular epidermis and the dermis. Under the electron microscope, it is seen to be composed of four components, listed from the outermost layer: the plasma

membrane of the basal keratinocytes, the clear lamina lucida, the electron-dense basal lamina, and the dermal fibrils and bundles of fine filaments [1]. Some details of the components of this junction are provided in a later segment.

Stratum Basale

The stratum basale or stratum germinativum (Fig. 1.1) is a continuous layer that gives rise to all the keratinocytes. It is usually described as one cell thick, but in thick normal or in pathological epidermis it appears that mitosis may not be confined to cells in contact with the basement membrane. A portion of the basal cells is proliferative. These are the cells that differentiate and move up through the epidermis, eventually to become the components of the stratum corneum and later desquamate. The replacement time for the whole epidermis is probably about 42 days and for the stratum corneum about 14 days, and it is generally agreed that the times are considerably less in psoriatic skin. While the process of keratinization remains incompletely understood, in normal skin the desquamation of keratinocytes is in equilibrium with the generation of keratinocytes by mitosis of the proliferating cells. The importance of this equilibrium is best understood by studying examples of those skin diseases with abnormal keratinization. Abnormally rapid transformation of basal cells into horny cells of the stratum corneum occurs in psoriasis. Ichthyosis vulgaris, on the other hand, is a genetic disorder that results from abnormal retention of keratinocytes.

Cells of the stratum basale have a basophilic cytoplasm and dark-staining elongated nuclei; under the electron microscope their cytoplasm reveals many ribosomes, mitochondria, and sometimes smooth membranes. In addition, they contain numerous fine tonofilaments, about 5 nm in diameter, that form the developing cytoskeleton. The basal cells also often contain melanin, transferred from adjacent melanocytes. Intercellular bridges, or desmosomes, connect basal cells with one another and with the overlying squamous cells. Modified desmosomes, or hemidesmosomes, connect the basal cells to the underlying basement membrane zone.

Stratum Spinosum

The stratum spinosum or prickle cell layer is so called because the cells are given a spiny appearance by the numerous desmosomes. These desmosomes, or specialized attachment plates for the cellular tonofilaments, correlate with the intercellular bridges between keratinocytes. The glycocalyx is the intercellular cement between keratinocytes and is composed of glycoproteins. In the upper region of the stratum spinosum, lamellar granules, also known as keratinosomes or Odland bodies, make their appearance. These are ovoid bodies about 100–500 nm long. In the stratum granulosum they ultimately migrate toward the periphery of the cell and are discharged into the intercellular spaces.

6 Harry's Cosmeticology

Their appearance there correlates with the degradation of keratinocytes. Their lipid contents act to establish a barrier to water loss and may participate in stratum corneum cellular cohesion.

Stratum Granulosum

The thickness of the granular cell layer is usually proportional to the thickness of the stratum corneum. It may be only one cell layer thick in thin skin and up to 10 layers on the palms and soles. The cells contain basophilic granules of a material called keratohyalin, a material thought to be responsible for keratin filament aggregation. The “hard” keratins of hair and nail lack these keratohyalin granules.

Stratum Lucidum

The stratum lucidum, not seen in most formalin-fixed sections, is located at the deepest portion of the stratum corneum. It can be recognized only in palmar and plantar skin.

Stratum Corneum

In the stratum corneum the keratinocytes have lost their nuclei and virtually all of their cytoplasmic organelles and contents, including the keratohyalin granules. This layer of cells is about 10 cells thick (10 μ) and is located on top of the viable epidermis, a 100 μ thick layer of about 10 biologically active keratinocyte cells. This corneal cell layer stains eosinophilic because of the absence of the basophilic nucleus. The cells are flattened and completely filled with keratin, in the form of bundles of filaments embedded in an opaque inter-filamentous material. The keratin filaments align into disulfide cross-linked macrofibers under the influence of filaggrin, the protein component of the keratohyalin granule responsible for keratin filament aggregation [2]. The structure of the stratum corneum has been compared to that of a brick wall, with the corneocytes as bricks and the intercellular lipids as mortar [3]. Horny cells are continuously shed from the skin surface.

During epidermal differentiation, changes are also seen in the composition of lipids. Cholesterol, triglycerides, and phospholipids exist in the lower layers of the epidermis. In the stratum spinosum and stratum granulosum, though, lipids are packaged into the lamellar granules. These lipids include phospholipids, glycolipids, and free sterols. These polar lipids are reorganized into neutral lipids in the intercellular spaces once the contents of the lamellar granules are released. The stratum corneum is therefore rich in ceramides, free sterols, and free fatty acids [4]. There are six major classes of free ceramides and two major classes of ceramides bound to cell surfaces in the stratum corneum.

Research conducted about 15 to 20 years ago suggested that the polar lipids found in the lamellar granules and in viable layers of the skin are modified under the influence of enzymes to assume more nonpolar characteristics. Some of these features are summarized in Table 1.1.

The makeup of lipids suggests that hydrophilic lipids are excluded from the stratum corneum to provide a hydrophobic surface.

TERMINAL DIFFERENTIATION

Terminal differentiation describes the change of the cuboidal keratinocytes (on the basement membrane) to the flat cellular remnants that are shed from the skin surface. The progressive changes of keratinocytes are illustrated in Figure 1.2 and are accompanied by biochemical changes, formation of keratins, formation and hydrolytic changes in lipids, loss of water, and cross-linking of cell envelopes.

The formation of keratins proceeds from the intermediate filaments present in keratinocytes.

Intermediate filaments of more than 50 types are synthesized in human tissues. In skin, two types (I and II) are specifically expressed in epithelial cells. In this classification acidic keratins (cytokeratins K9–K20) are identified as type I, while the so-called basic keratins (cytokeratins K1–K8) are classified as type II. In skin the keratins are customarily dimers of one type I and one type II. The fundamental structure of the intermediate filaments includes coil-coil α -helical segments bonded to each other by so-called (nonhelical) linker segments. Both ends of the rod-shaped filament are terminated by peptides. The exact modus of attachment of these filaments to each other to form the

Table 1.1 Level of Epidermal Lipids (%)

Fraction	Basal layer	Stratum granulosum	Stratum corneum	
			Whole	Outer
Polar lipids (phospholipids, cholesteryl sulfate)	45	25	5	2
Neutral lipids (sterols, fatty acids, hydrocarbons, triglycerides)	51	56	80	68
Sphingolipids	8	12	18	27
Glucosyl ceramides	4	5	Trace	Trace

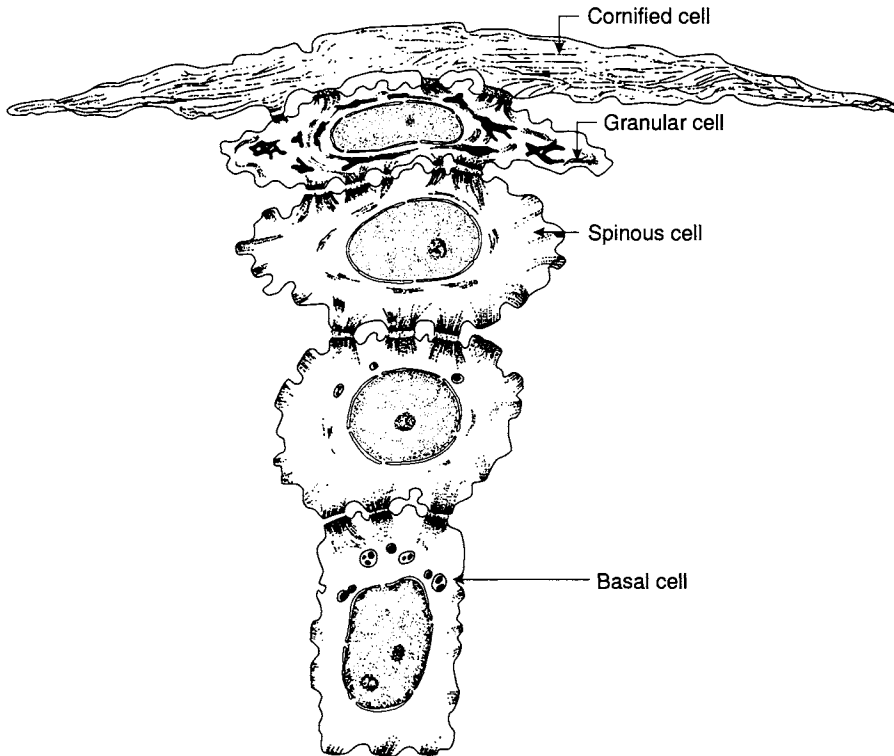


Figure 1.2. Conversion of individual basal keratinocytes into the flat cells of the stratum corneum

keratins within the keratinocytes is still under investigation. As noted, epithelial cytoskeletal filaments generally belong to one of two keratin (acidic or neutral-basic) groups ranging in molecular weight from about 40 to 70 kDa. Filaggrin has been identified as one of the keratohyalin proteins forms in differentiating keratinocytes. Filaggrin is involved in the aggregation of keratin filaments to form the keratins found in mature keratinocytes or corneal cells. After filaggrin has served its function as a matrix between intermediate filaments, it is hydrolyzed enzymatically to create various free amino acids that form part of the natural moisturizing factor.

The hydrolytic changes of the epidermal lipids are also controlled by keratinocytes, which discharge lipids into the intercellular space after forming the so-called lamellar granules. These lipids are distinctly different from the sebaceous lipids secreted by the sebaceous glands. In the process of terminal differentiation, which requires about three to four weeks, the basal cell (keratinocyte) generates a remarkable set of complex lipids (e.g.,

ceramides). During the cells' passage outward, these lipids are modified (become more hydrophobic) to create the biphasic structure commonly called stratum corneum. The function of this outermost covering of the human body is discussed later in this chapter under "Barrier Function."

During its ascent to the skin surface, the keratinocyte shrinks, primarily through loss of water. The fate of this water is not known, but one may safely assume that it becomes part of the evaporating water generally described as transepidermal water loss. The loss of water during the maturation of keratinocytes is an important phenomenon that must be considered in studies of skin moisture levels (Fig. 1.3). The level of water in the basal layer is about that found in internal tissues, that is, about 80–85%. The water level drops stepwise to about 35% at the border between the stratum granulosum and the stratum corneum. The water level in the topmost layers of the skin is variable and is under the control of the environment and the evaporative flux from lower skin layers.

Finally, the proteins in the cell membranes of the maturing keratinocytes undergo drastic changes due to cross-linking. This provides the terminally differentiated corneal cell with a rigid cell envelope that is chemically resistant and acts as a protective coating. The most important enzymes that play a role in this process are transglutaminases which catalyze ϵ -(γ -glutamyl) lysine cross-linking. Involucrin is the primary cytoplasmic precursor to the protein making up the cell envelope. Other cross-linked proteins are present and have been identified, for example, loricrin.

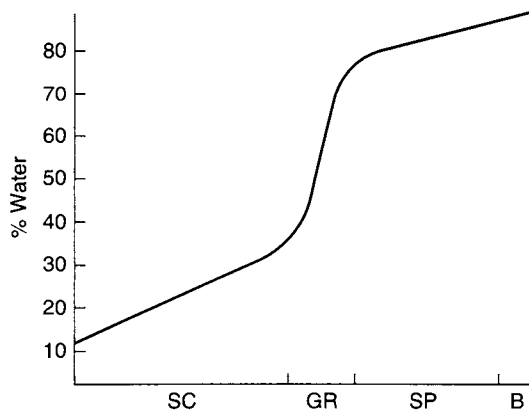


Figure 1.3. Water concentration profile in epidermal layers [SC—stratum corneum; GR—stratum granulosum; SP—stratum spinosum; B—basal layer (stratum germinativum)]

Biologists have further identified some layers within the stratum corneum. The so-called desquamating layer at the surface is frequently called stratum corneum disjunction, while the layer below it is known as stratum corneum conjunction. To complete this highly simplified discussion of the skin, it is important to note that the layer of keratinocytes is frequently identified as viable epidermis. Cells from this layer can be cultured and are commonly used to study the release of cytokines and the like and the impact of drugs and/or cosmetic ingredients. In contrast, the nonviable epidermis includes only the dead cells of the stratum corneum.

Before leaving the life history of the epidermis, the process of differentiation should be considered as proceeding from the inside to the exterior. The outward movement of biological debris, water, and lipids directly opposes human efforts to drive ingredients/drugs into and through the skin unless special efforts are made to create molecules that are shaped and manipulated to permeate.

PIGMENTARY SYSTEM

Melanocytes are dendritic cells that produce and secrete melanosomes, which contain melanin. Melanin is the major determinant of skin color. The number of melanocytes in the epidermis is the same regardless of skin color; it is rather the number and size of melanosomes produced that determine the color of one's skin. Melanosomes in dark skin are nonaggregated, whereas they are smaller and form membrane-bound complexes in light skin. Melanocytes are derived from the neural crest in the embryo and are seen in the basal layer of the epidermis by the eighth week of gestation. They differ from the other cells of the stratum basale by the possession of dendritic processes, by which they transfer pigment to a group of keratinocytes, the whole forming the "epidermal melanin unit" [5]. Typically each melanocyte is associated with about 36–40 keratinocytes in the human epidermis. Melanocytes have no desmosomes and thus, when stained with hematoxylin and eosin, appear to have a halo due to the separation from adjacent keratinocytes. The concentration of melanocytes, though, does vary in different areas of the skin, with the highest concentration on the face and the male genitalia and the lowest concentration on the trunk.

The characteristic feature of melanocytes is a special cytoplasmic organelle known as a melanosome in which the melanin is formed by the action of the enzyme tyrosinase. The melanosomes arise as spherical, membrane-bound vesicles in the zone of the Golgi apparatus and eventually appear as densely pigmented granules [6].

Melanins are quinoid polymers of two kinds. Pheomelanins are yellow or red in color, and eumelanins produce the brown or black color. Both

are formed by the same initial steps, which involve oxidation of tyrosine to 3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) and its dehydrogenation to DOPA-quinone. The formation of eumelanins then involves several further steps to produce indole-5,6-quinone, which polymerizes and becomes linked to protein. It is now believed that eumelanin is not a homopolymer composed solely of indole-5,6-quinone units but rather a poikilopolymer that includes several intermediates. Pheomelanins are formed by a different route. The DOPA-quinone interacts with cysteine to form 5-S- and 2-S-cysteinyl-dopa, and these isomers are further oxidized to a series of intermediates that then polymerize [7].

The formation of melanin depends on the generation of free radical species. The biochemical pathways leading to the formation of melanin pigments *in vivo* were described by Raper and by Raper and Mason and more recently by Prota. This information can be found in most textbooks of biochemistry and is not repeated here. Once formed, melanin has been identified as a (stable?) free radical that can react with superoxide.

The significance of melanin as a purported photoprotectant and the response of skin to ultraviolet (UV) irradiation are so important to skin appearance and health that these topics are discussed in Section B, "Responses to Sunlight of Human Skin."

LANGERHANS CELLS

Langerhans cells are bone marrow-derived cells of the monocyte-macrophage lineage. They are found scattered among the stratum spinosum and constitute approximately 3–4% of all epidermal cells. These dendritic cells are similar in form and number to melanocytes but contain no pigment. The hallmark of the Langerhans cell is the characteristic cytoplasmic organelles called Birbeck granules. These are formed when a membrane-bound antigen is internalized in the Langerhans cell.

Langerhans cells are responsible for the recognition, uptake, processing, and presentation of antigens in the epidermis to T lymphocytes. It is by this pathway that they play a crucial role in immunosurveillance, contact sensitization, and allograft skin rejection. Langerhans cell function is impaired by UVB radiation, resulting in a decrease in the antigen-presenting capacity and in the production of cytokines.

APPENDAGEAL STRUCTURES

Eccrine Sweat Glands

Humans have several million eccrine sweat glands distributed over most skin sites, but they are more concentrated in the axilla, forehead, palms, and soles.

12 Harry's Cosmeticology

In some areas they number as many as 600 glands per cm^2 . Eccrine sweat glands are the most numerous skin appendages and are responsible for the production of sweat. They have a cylindrical spiral duct lined with epidermal cells extending from their visible opening in the epidermis down into the deep dermis, where the duct becomes coiled and convoluted into a ball [8]. This secretory coil manufactures the odorless sweat, which rises up the duct to be released on the skin surface. It is thought that the duct of the gland has the ability to modify the sweat as it flows upward by removing salts or water. The sweat glands control both body temperature and excretion, and they are under the control of the cholinergic nervous system. The evaporation of sweat has a cooling effect. The glands respond to environmental temperature but also to other stimuli, such as UV light, emotional stress, and rises in body temperature. On the palms and soles, the secretion from the glands serves to increase surface friction.

Sweating appears to involve activation of myoepithelial cells, which line the ducts of the glands. Although sweating is considered to be a continuous process, it seems that sweat is ejected in small bursts, suggesting a peristaltic action by the ducts. The composition of eccrine sweat is similar to that of plasma, although more dilute, and was documented about 40 years ago. It includes, in decreasing relative concentration (mg %): Cl^- (320), Na^+ (200), lactic acid (35), K^+ (20), urea (15), ammonia (5), Ca^{++} (2), glucose^{++} (2), Mg^{++} (1), amino acid (1), and creatinine (0.3). More information on eccrine sweat production is included in Chapter 21.

Apocrine Glands

The apocrine glands are tubular glands attached to the hair follicle and, like the sebaceous glands, develop in association with it [9]. Although rudiments are found covering the entire surface of the fetus, the glands become canalized and functional almost exclusively in the axillae, the anogenital regions, the areola, the external auditory canal, and the eyelids. In humans, apocrine gland secretions are milky and viscous but without odor. Odor production is related to bacterial action at the skin surface.

After puberty, secretion is in response to emotive stimuli. Adrenergic nerves control secretory activity, in contrast to the cholinergic control of eccrine function. The function of the glands in the human species has been much debated, but they serve no known function. In other mammals the glands serve a sexual function.

Sebaceous Glands

Sebaceous glands [10] secrete sebum, which forms the majority of the lipid that covers the skin and hair. They are found in all areas of human skin except the palms, soles, and dorsum of the feet. Sebaceous glands are usually

associated with hair follicles, except for those on the nipple, areola, and labia minora. The greatest concentrations (reportedly as high as 400–900/cm²) are found on the scalp, face, upper chest, and shoulders.

The glands are holocrine and thus form their secretion by decomposition of their cells. New cells are formed continually from the lining of the gland by cell division to replace those lost. No motor innervation has been demonstrated in humans. During the generation of sebum, cells at the periphery of the lobule undergo division. As the daughter cell moves toward the center of the lobule, it synthesizes lipids. As the sebum accumulates, the cell increases in volume as much as 150-fold. When synthesis is complete, cell rupture occurs. This process from cell division to rupture requires approximately 14 days. The relatively long delay must be taken into consideration when designing drugs and therapies aimed at altering sebum.

Sebaceous gland activity is under hormonal control. It is stimulated by androgens of both gonadal and adrenal origin. In human males the glands are minute during the prepubertal period but undergo vast enlargement at puberty, when their output increases more than fivefold. Eunuchs secrete about half as much sebum as normal males but substantially more than boys; it seems that the secretion is dependent on adrenal androgens. Adult women secrete only a little less than men; their sebaceous activity appears to be maintained by androgens from the ovary and the adrenal cortex. Estrogens and anti-androgens, such as cyproterone acetate, inhibit sebaceous secretion in man. On the other hand, relatively small doses of potent androgens can cause enlargement of the glands and an increase in sebum production.

Human sebum is composed of triglycerides (57.5%), wax esters (26.0%), squalene (12.0%), free fatty acids (10%), and to a minor extent cholesterol and cholesterol esters. Epidermally derived lipids differ in lacking wax esters and squalene and having much higher proportions of cholesterol esters and cholesterol. There are marked differences in sebum composition among species. The origins of sebaceous lipids and their composition are different from those of the epidermal lipids [4].

The purpose of sebum is not known. While excessive sebum production has been associated with the development of acne vulgaris, lack of sebum production in prepubertal children is not associated with any skin abnormalities.

HAIR

Perhaps no single structure of the skin plays as important a role as human hair. And despite the vast body of knowledge regarding the anatomy, biology, and function of hair, humans are still unable to induce hair regrowth in the many disorders that result in hair loss or to effect permanent hair removal in states

14 Harry's Cosmeticology

of excessive hair. The cost of hair care in terms of time and money spent is huge in many cultures, and the psychological impact of hair disorders should not be underestimated.

The hair follicle is quite variable, depending on its location. In adults deep terminal hairs are found on the scalp and male beard area. Hair on the extremities and trunk is located more superficially in the skin. Vellus hairs are present on the female face and on the nonbearded areas of the male face. Lanugo is soft fine hair that covers the fetus and is shed prior to birth.

In general, the cross-sectional shape of terminal Caucasian scalp hair is round and somewhat curly; African American scalp hair is oval, sometimes flattened, and usually kinky; hair in Asians is round in cross-section and straight. These relationships do not apply to pubic hair, beard hair, and eyelashes, which have similar features in all races and are typically oval.

Hair color is due to the distribution of melanosomes within the hair shaft produced by melanocytes in the hair bulb. These are transferred to cells of the hair matrix similar to the transfer from melanocytes to keratinocyte in the epidermis. Three types of melanosomes are present in hair. Eumelanins are seen in dark hair, and pheomelanins predominate in blond hair. The intensity of color is related to the number of fully melanized melanosomes produced. Gray hair and white hair are due to a decreased number of melanocytes that produce fewer melanosomes.

A much more detailed discussion of hair—growth, properties, and chemistry—is found in Chapter 2.

NAILS

The nail plate is composed of keratinized cells that originate in the epidermis of the nail matrix. As discussed previously, there are no keratohyalin granules. The proximal nail fold forms the cuticle. The nailbed does not contribute to the development of the nail plate but serves as a network of parallel longitudinal ridges under the plate. The structure and growth characteristics of the human nail are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 3.

SKIN FUNCTIONS

CYTOKINES

Cytokines are proteins produced primarily by keratinocytes that act on other cells to mediate inflammation. The epidermal keratinocyte is a prodigious source of immunologic molecules and thus participates in cutaneous immunologic and inflammatory reactions [11]. Some of these factors are produced constitutively, while others are produced only after signal

transduction by external or systemic cues. Activated keratinocytes produce a variety of cytokines including interleukins (IL-1, IL-3, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-10), granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, macrophage colony-stimulating factor, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF- α), transforming growth factors (TGF- α , TGF- β), platelet-derived growth factor, fibroblast growth factor, and nerve growth factor. This capability confers upon keratinocytes an active role in regulating the synthesis of extracellular matrix molecules. For example, IL-1, one of the most studied cytokines of the epidermis, appears to be released from the skin in response to UVB. The release of this cytokine after exposure to sunlight may account for some of the features of the sunlight response.

With the advent of recombinant DNA technology, human cytokines have become increasingly available for clinical use, and there are well-documented cutaneous toxicities associated with these agents.

ENZYMES

Enzymes are important constituents of the skin and are located in the epidermis and dermis. Primary lysosomes are membrane-bound and contain a variety of hydrolytic enzymes. They are found in the Golgi region of the keratinocytes primarily within the basal cell layer. Lysosomal enzymes are also found in the lamellar granules, as mentioned earlier. Secondary lysosomes, called phagolysosomes, are present in the basal cell layer of the epidermis. They digest phagocytized melanosomes and cellular constituents following epidermal injury.

Mast cells are rich in enzymes including histamines, heparin, tryptase, chymase, and other enzymes important in allergic reactions. Enzymes also play an essential role in the continuous remodeling of the collagens, elastin, glycosaminoglycans, and glycoproteins of the extracellular matrix. The initial step in the complex process of degradation and replacement involves enzymes called metalloproteinases [12]. Collagenase, one of the metalloproteinases, initiates the proteolytic events that result in the breakdown of collagen. Topical retinoids used in treating the effects of photoaging probably act by decreasing the production of collagenase.

The viable epidermis includes the previously noted proteolytic and lipolytic enzymes. In addition, antioxidant enzymes are available to help in the protection of skin against solar irradiation. A brief discussion of these enzymes is included in Chapter 12. The desquamation of corneal squames is likely to require proteolytic or lipolytic enzymes in nonviable environments. The exact nature of these participants in skin homeostasis is not known, but their need to perform in a benign (moist) environment has been established, as described by Rawlings et al. [13].

BARRIER FUNCTION

Granular cells release small organelles called Odland bodies into the intercellular space. These granules, which contain a trilaminar membrane, establish a barrier to water loss and mediate stratum corneum cell cohesion. The lamellar granules fuse with the granular cell plasma membrane and secrete their contents of polar lipids, hydrolytic enzymes, and free sterols into the intercellular spaces [13]. After they release their contents, the lipids become organized into lamellae, which provide the structural basis for the barrier to epidermal permeability. The hydrolytic enzymes that are released are thought to change polar lipids into more hydrophobic lipid products such as free fatty acids, cholesterol, and ceramides. These coalesce into sheets within the intercellular space of the stratum corneum, thus forming a waterproof barrier. Acid phosphatases, which are also released from the Odland bodies, are thought to promote desquamation by breaking up the intercellular connections of the keratinocytes.

The major barrier to permeation through and penetration into the epidermis is a so-called "intact" stratum corneum barrier. Such a system consists of corneal cells with their proteinaceous envelopes surrounded by the essentially nonpolar lipid remnant sheets of the lamellar granules. Any substance (hydrophilic or hydrophobic) must permeate the lipid sheets formed by a complex network of fatty acids, cholesterol, and ceramides. The sheets of this lipid network are believed to exist as bilayers. Imperfections in the lipid network due to injury, water swelling, or solvent/detergent extraction facilitate the permeation of diverse species through the corneal barrier. Once the permeant reaches the viable epidermis, its progress is much less impeded. Investigators of these phenomena agree that absence of or damage to the corneal barrier leaves the body open to invasion of both desirable and noxious components of topical products. For further details readers are urged to consult Ref. 14.

Skin is not totally impermeable, however, and its permeability shows regional variations and, reportedly, changes from birth to old age. The degree of absorption depends on the properties of the substance and the composition of the vehicle. In general, the faster and more extensively penetrating compounds are relatively nonpolar small molecules. Certain factors are known to influence percutaneous absorption of substances. For example, increased skin temperature and increased water content of the skin result in an increase in absorption through the skin. The increased hydration of the stratum corneum induces swelling of the corneocytes and uptake of water into the intercellular spaces, thus disrupting the physical barrier of the skin and allowing for a more favorable environment for hydrophilic substances.

Vehicles also affect the absorption of incorporated compounds. Important factors include the absorption characteristics of the vehicle, the degree of partition between the vehicle and the stratum corneum, and the concentration of the compound in the vehicle. Most substances traverse the thick palmoplantar stratum corneum in significantly smaller amounts than they do the thin stratum corneum of other regions.

Skin damaged by diseases or chemicals is much more permeable than is intact skin. This change reflects the effect that these agents have on the physicochemical state of the stratum corneum. Diseases such as toxic epidermal necrolysis and pemphigus, which produce complete denaturation of the epidermis, dramatically increase permeability. Chemicals that can damage the skin include solvents, denaturants, and surfactants.

The topical application to the skin of drugs for the treatment of cutaneous and systemic disorders has become an established route of administration. In general, drugs with low molecular weights and some degree of both oil solubility and water solubility can penetrate the skin adequately. Topical drug administration is most certainly useful for intradermal therapy. The currently popular systemic drug administration via topical dosing (patching and the like) requires deliberate damaging of the skin's barrier function to enhance drug permeation. Some drugs that require minimal barrier damage for transdermal therapy include nitroglycerin for coronary artery disease and estradiol for estrogen replacement.

DERMIS

The dermis [15] is a tough and resilient tissue that cushions the body against mechanical injury and provides nutrient to the epidermis and cutaneous appendages. It consists of an association of protein fibers within an amorphous ground substance containing glycosaminoglycans (GAGs), previously known as mucopolysaccharides. There are few cells in this matrix; most of them are fibroblasts, which secrete the dermal constituents. Fibroblasts are derived from the mesenchyme. The mast cell, also of mesenchymal origin, houses granules that contain heparin, histamine, and other active substances. The mast cell is an active participant in skin inflammation and irritation, as well as in several other skin disorders. The dermis also houses blood, contains lymphatic and nervous systems, and surrounds the invaginated epidermal appendages. The GAGs in the dermis can hold copious amounts of water and tend to surround the other constituents of the matrix. Together with the fibrous portion of the matrix, these substances account for the skin's flexibility and resistance to deformation.

COLLAGEN

The major fibrous constituent of the dermis, accounting for 75% of the dry weight and 18–30% of the volume, is collagen [16]. Under the light microscope collagen fibers appear as eosinophilic branching wavy bands. Collagen fibers are loosely arranged in the papillary dermis and are tightly bundled in the reticular dermis. Pilosebaceous units, eccrine glands, and apocrine and dermal blood vessels are surrounded by a thin meshwork of collagen. Collagen fibers display characteristic cross-striations with a periodicity of 60–70 nm. Collagen is rich in the amino acids hydroxyproline, hydroxylysine, and glycine. The fibroblasts produce a precursor known as procollagen, which includes 300–400 additional amino acids in each of its chains; these extensions are removed after secretion, which results in the conversion to the collagen molecule. Collagen fibrils form by the association of collagen molecules. Vitamin C and copper are two of several cofactors required in the biosynthesis of collagen. Collagen production is a dynamic process that involves continual synthesis by fibroblasts and degradation by collagenases.

ELASTIN AND RETICULIN

Elastic fibers make up only 4% of the dry weight and 1% of the volume of the dermis. They are delicate, straight, freely branching fibers that prove very resilient. These fibers are thicker in the lower portion of the dermis and become thinner as they approach the epidermis. Elastin differs from collagen not only structurally but also chemically. Desmosine is an amino acid unique to elastin.

About 0.4% of the dry weight of the dermis is made up of fine branching fibers which, unlike collagen, stain black with silver nitrate and are known as reticulin. Their axial periodicity is identical to that of collagen. Reticulin fibers in the papillary dermis serve to anchor the basal lamina [16].

GROUND SUBSTANCE

The amorphous ground substance in which the fibers and cells lie contains acidic GAGs. In dermis the major forms are hyaluronic acid, chondroitin sulfate, and dermatan sulfate.

NERVES

The skin is supplied with both sensory and autonomic nerves. It is innervated with about one million afferent nerve fibers; most terminate in the face and extremities, and relatively few supply the back. The sensory nerves, unlike autonomic nerves, possess a myelin sheath up to their terminal ramifications.

The papillary dermis is heavily innervated with unmyelinated nerve fibers that transmit the sensations of temperature, pain, and pruritis. Three types of special nerve end organs also exist in the dermis. Vater-Pacini corpuscles are large end-organs that are located in the deeper portions of the dermis and subcutis and mediate a sense of pressure. They measure up to 1 mm in diameter and have their greatest concentration at the tips of the fingers and toes. A few are present in the nipple and anogenital regions. Meissner corpuscles are located in the dermal papillae and mediate the sense of touch. They occur only on the ventral aspects of the hands and feet and are most concentrated in the fingertips. The mucocutaneous end-organs are found in the papillary dermis of the modified hairless skin of the glans, the prepuce, the clitoris, the labia minora, the perianal region, and the vermilion border.

The autonomic nervous system supplies fibers to the arrector pili muscles, the blood vessels, and the eccrine and apocrine glands. The sebaceous glands are not innervated, and their functioning depends on endocrine stimuli. The autonomic nervous system controls vasoconstriction, contraction of the arrector pili muscles, and glandular secretion.

VASCULATURE

The dermal vasculature consists of intercommunicating plexuses. The subpapillary plexus lies within the papillary dermis and runs parallel to the epidermis to furnish a supply of capillaries, arterioles, and venules to the dermal papillae. The deeper plexuses are composed of larger vessels and surround hair follicles and eccrine glands. The dermal lymphatics are associated with the vascular plexuses.

MUSCLES

Smooth muscle occurs in the skin as the arrector pili muscles of the hair to pull the follicle upward with contraction. There are also smooth muscles fibers in the scrotum and the areolas.

Striated muscle occurs in the skin within the neck as the platysmas and in the muscles of expression of the face.

Special aggregates of smooth muscles are found between the arterioles and the venules in the skin. These serve to shunt blood from the arterial to the venous system directly and thus bypass the capillary system.

SKIN DAMAGE

There are numerous dermatoses caused by damage from external forces; only a few of the more common ones are described in this section.

Thermal burns are caused by excessive heat on the skin. The changes in the skin due to dry heat or scalding are classified in four degrees. A sunburn is the most common example of a first-degree burn and results from active congestion of the skin. This erythema may be followed by peeling of the epidermis. In a second-degree burn there is leakage of serum from capillaries leading to edema and vesicles, but patients recover without scar formation. Third- and fourth-degree burns involve partial and full thickness dermal involvement and by definition heal with scar formation.

Sunburn is defined as the reaction of the skin to sunlight exposure in excess of the dose that causes only erythema. Details of the response of skin to UV light or sun exposure are described in a later section of this chapter. Erythemogenic UV exposure causes edema of the epidermis, depletion of Langerhans cells, and microvascular injury. UV light can also cause damage to cellular DNA by inducing the production of thymine dimers and DNA strand breaks via the activation of oxygen radicals. Chronic sun exposure causes photoaging and is associated with precancerous actinic keratosis as well as malignant basal cell and squamous cell carcinomas. These phenomena, too, are described in some detail in a later segment of this chapter.

Frostbite occurs when soft parts are frozen and deprived of their blood supply. Common areas of involvement include the ears, nose, cheeks, fingers, and toes. The frozen area becomes pale and waxy, usually without associated pain. Various degrees of destruction occur to the skin, similar to those seen in burns.

The effects of ionizing radiation on the skin depend on the amount of radiation and the intensity of exposure. Large doses cause cell death, while smaller doses lead to temporary arrest of mitosis and chromosomal breaks. An acute radiodermatitis occurs after a latent period of a few hours to several days. The symptoms include erythema, edema, vesiculation, and ulceration and may take weeks to months to clear. Chronic exposure to ionizing radiation damages the skin to varying degrees. After a latent period, changes include telangiectasias, atrophy, xerosis, striated and brittle nails, sparse hair, and possible ulcerations and carcinomas.

Callus is a pressure-induced circumscribed hyperkeratosis. It occurs over areas of intermittent pressure, especially over the bony prominences. Treatment considerations include padding to relieve pressure, paring of the lesion, and the use of keratolytics.

CHRONOLOGIC AGING OF THE SKIN

The aging of the skin is attributable to two processes: true aging related to the intrinsic passage of time and photoaging resulting from chronic UV

light exposure. The mechanism by which aging occurs is not known, but the physiologic decline of the skin as one ages is well documented [17]. Major age-related changes in the skin's appearance include dryness, wrinkling, laxity, and development of benign neoplasms (Table 1.2). Functions of the skin that decline with age are numerous but include decreased sebum production, lowered chemical clearance in the dermis, and delayed cell replacement (Table 1.3).

Histologically one sees a flattening of the dermo-epidermal junction, with a 50% reduction in the number of interdigitations between the dermal papillae and the epidermal rete pegs between the third and ninth decades. The reduced smaller contact area between these two tissues allows for less communication and less nutrient transfer as the skin ages. While there is little epidermal atrophy, the aged dermis is atrophic and relatively acellular and avascular. There is a loss of dermal thickness of 20% in elderly persons, thought to be related to the loss of elastin and collagen fibers and contractions of connective tissue septae within the subcutaneous fat [18].

To the casual observer, the major symptoms of aging skin are wrinkles. The abrogation of wrinkles or means for their repair via cosmetic manipulation has become a primary concern. Chronologic aging of skin and sunlight-induced aging are characterized by flattening of the dermo-epidermal junction and various biochemical changes in the dermis. The latter include reduction of

Table 1.2 Histologic Features of Aging Skin

Epidermis	Dermis	Appendages
Flattened dermal-epidermal junction	Atrophy (loss of dermal volume)	Depigmented hair
Variable thickness	Fewer fibroblasts	Loss of hair
Variable cell size and shape	Fewer mast cells	Conversion of terminal to vellus hair
Occasional nuclear atypia	Fewer blood vessels	Abnormal nail plates
Fewer melanocytes	Shortened capillary loops	Fewer glands
Fewer Langerhans cells	Abnormal nerve endings	

Table 1.3 Functions of Skin That Decline with Age

Cell replacement	Vascular responsiveness
Injury response	Thermoregulation
Barrier function	Sweat production
Chemical clearance	Sebum production
Sensory perception	Vitamin D production
Immune responsiveness	

collagen VII and of several GAGs and loss of adipose tissue. At the same time, elastic tissue hypertrophy tends to increase the size of wrinkles. The oxytalon fibers that extend from the dermo-epidermal junction downward into the papillary dermis are lost or at least decreased during both types of aging.

The debate concerning age-associated changes in the percutaneous absorption of substances through the epidermis continues. It has been established, though, that there is an age-associated decrease in the dermal clearance of transepidermally absorbed materials. Clinically this may be observed in the persistence of contact dermatitis in the elderly.

Decreased vascular responsiveness has been documented in older skin, as has mild dermal microvascular wall thickening, probably contributing to vascular fragility of older skin.

Studies have shown an age-associated decrease of 30–50% in epidermal turnover rate between the third and eighth decades, which explains the delayed wound healing seen in the elderly. Experiments have shown easier separation of the epidermis from the dermis with age, which explains the ease with which elderly skin tears and forms abrasions. In vivo studies have shown a significant decline in skin elasticity and extensibility during each decade of life.

While the size and number of sebaceous glands do not decrease with age, there is a 60% reduction in sebum production over the adult life span, secondary to a decrease in androgen production. There is also a reduction in the output of apocrine and eccrine glands. Unlike intrinsic aging, photoaging is related to cumulative damage to the cellular constituents of the skin, at least in part at the DNA level by UV and infrared radiation [19]. Photoaging accounts for more than 90% of the skin's age-associated cosmetic problems and has become synonymous with “true chronologic aging” in the public's mind. Clinically it is characterized by coarseness, wrinkling, mottled pigmentation, solar lentigines (“age spots” or “liver spots”), laxity, telangiectasias, and atrophy. Increased numbers of benign and malignant neoplasms develop with age. A more detailed discussion concerning photoaging—its cause and possible reversal—is included in the following sections of this chapter.

Responses to Sunlight of Human Skin

INTRODUCTION

Exposure to sunlight can have both beneficial and harmful effects on the human body, depending on the length and frequency of exposure, the intensity of the sunlight, and the sensitivity of the individual concerned. For light to interact with any material, it needs to be absorbed. Once the light is absorbed, it raises

Index

Note: boldface numbers indicate illustrations; (*t*) indicates tabular information.

- Abrasives in dry nail polishes, 596–597
- Abrasives in masks, 471
- Abrasives in toothpastes, 726, 728–730, 740–741
- Absence of nails (anonychia), 74
- Acacia gum
 - as contamination source, 277
 - in masks, 481
- Acetamide MEA
 - as hygroscopic agent, 267 (*t*)
 - in hair setting/styling products, 645, 646, 664
 - in skin cleansers, 497
- Acetone, in nail polishes, 579
- Acetyl ethyl tetramethyl tetralin (AETT), 134
- Acetylated lanolin
 - in acne products, 467
 - as emulsifier, 221
 - in lipsticks, 548
 - in shaving preparations, 504, 506
- Acid cold wave solution, 705
- Acid hydrolysis by surfactants, 192
- Acid solubility of tooth, 90, 98–99
- Acids and antioxidants, 248
- Acne products, 142, 459–469
 - active ingredients for therapy, 466
 - adapalene in, 468
 - adjunctive therapies and, 467–468
 - alpha hydroxy acid in, 468
 - antibacterial cleansing cream, 464
 - antimicrobials in, 467–468
 - astringent cleansers in, 465
 - bentonite, 464
 - benzoyl peroxide in, 465, 466, 467
 - clear facial cleanser, 464
 - clindamycin in, 467
 - comedogenesis in, 460, 462
 - comedogenicity testing of, 462, 463 (*t*)
 - comedones in, 460, 462
 - cream for, 468
 - diet and, 461
 - emulsion cleansers in, 463
 - environmental factors in, 460
 - erythromycin in, 467
 - etiology of acne and, 459–461, **460**
 - gel for, 468
 - glycolic acid in, 468
 - hexachlorophene in, 467
 - hormonal influence on, 461
 - isotretinoin in, 468
 - lactic acid in, 468
 - magnesium aluminum silicate in, 464
 - oily skin treatments, 462–465
 - over-the-counter (OTC) treatments vs. drugs for, 459
 - pH levels and, 464
 - polyethylene, 464
 - pyrogenic silica in, 464
 - resorcinal-sulfur lotion, 466
 - resorcinol in, 466
 - salicylic acid in, 466
 - sebaceous gland and, 460
 - sebum in, 460
 - severity of, classification scale for, 461, 461 (*t*)
 - soaps in, 463–464
 - sulfur in, 465–466
 - symptoms of acne and, 459–461, **460**
 - talc in, 464
 - tretinoin in, 468
 - triclosan in, 467
 - ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 461
 - United States regulation of, 465
 - vitamin A in, 468
- Acrylamide copolymer, in shampoos, 622
- Acrylate copolymer, in foundation makeups, 529
- Acrylates, 118
 - in emulsions, 226
 - in foundation makeups, 538
 - in hair setting/styling products, 647, 659, 661, 662
 - in mascaras, 565, 566
 - in shampoos, 623
- Acrylic acid, in rheological additives, 245
- Acrylic polymers, 119
 - in nail polishes, 575, 577
- Acrylics, in nail polishes, 582
- ACTH, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 31
- Actinic keratosis, 33

- Actinic prurigo, 35
Actinic reticuloids, 35
Action spectrum of light in skin, 24–25, 25
Actuator for aerosols, 338–339
Acyl isethionates shampoo, 605
Acyl phosphates, 491
Acyl polypeptides, 491
n-Acyl polypeptide condensates, 606
Acyl sarcosinates, 491
Acyl taurates, 491
Acylated amino acids, in surfactants, 197
Acylated collagen, in shampoos, 622
Acylated peptides, 197
Acylglyceride sulfonates, 199
Acyloxyalkyl, in shaving preparations, 505
Adapalene, in acne products, 468
Adhesion of hair, 50
Adipates, in nail polishes, 577
Adsorption, 192, 193
 Gibbs adsorption equation for surfactants, 187–189, 191, 193, 216
 in surfactants, 192, 193
Adulteration in, 132–133
Advertising practices, U.S. regulation and, 146
Aerosol technology, 120–121, 333–347
 actuator for, 338–339
 alternatives to, 344–347
 antiperspirants and deodorants, use for, 450–451
 atmos dispensing system vs., 346
 bag-in-a-can spray systems vs., 345
 “blooming” gels, 509–510
 butane propellant for, 339
 chlorofluorocarbons as propellants for, 340
 co-dispensing systems vs., 347
 cold filling process for, 343
 components of, 334
 compressed gas propellant for, 343
 containers for, 334–336, 335
 corrosion inhibitors in, 508
 crimping of valve to container in, 338, 339 (*t*)
 definition of, 334
 dimethyl ether (DME) propellant for, 341
 dry spray dispensers vs., 346–347
 EP spray system vs., 346
 F-Z finger pump foamer system vs., 347
 filling of, 343
 hair setting/styling products, 653, 658–663
 head space in, 344
 history of, 333–334
 hot water bath testing of, 344
 hydrocarbon propellants for, 339–341
 hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) propellants for, 341–342
 internal can pressures, 508
 Lechner spray system vs., 346
 operation of, 344, 345
 piston spray system vs., 346
 post-foaming shave gels, 509–510
 pressure filling process for, 344
 principles of, 334
 propane propellant for, 339
 propellants for, 339–343, 507
 pump-activated spray systems vs., 346–347
 sepro can spray systems vs., 345–346
 shaving foams, 505–509
 spray rates, 508
 stability testing of, 347
 sunscreens, 431
 under-the-cup filling process for, 343
 valves used in, 336–338, 337
 volatile organic compounds (VOC) and, 507, 510, 515
After-shave products
 balms, 517–520
 gels, 517
 lotion, 131, 515–520
 powders, 520
Age-related cutaneous differences in skin sensitivity, 764
Aggregation of particles, 791
Aggregation structures in surfactants, 191
Aging of skin, 20–22, 21 (*t*)
Agitation and flow pattern, 802–808, 810–813
Agitation and rheological additive, 241–242
 of emulsions, 214–215, 222–223
Al/Mg hydroxide stearate, as rheological additive, 243
Alcohol, 119, 121
 in after-shave products, 515–518
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 454, 455
 as emulsifier, 221
 comedogenicity of, 463
 in emulsions, 220, 229
 in hair setting/styling products, 641, 648
 in hair straighteners, 711
 in mouthwashes, 746
 in nail polishes, 578
 in preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
 as rheological additive, 235
 in shampoos, 623
 in shaving preparations, 513
 in skin cleansers, 383, 498, 499, 500
 in surfactants, 199, 200, 203, 206
Alfalfa, 316, 318
Algae, 316, 318, 319
Alginate, 226
Alginic acid, 311
 as hydrophilic polymer, 268
Alizarin, 317
Alkalies
 as antioxidants, 248
 effect on hair, 63–64
 for hair waving, 689, 690, 700
 in shaving preparations, 503
Alkali hydroxides, in cuticle removers, 589
Alkaline cold wave solution, 705
Alkaline earths, in foundation makeups, 524
Alkannin, 319
Alkanoic acids, in surfactants, 197–198

- Alkanolamide
 as anionic surfactant, 491
 in hair colorants/dyes, 687
 in shampoos, 603
 in shaving preparations, 505
 in surfactants, 195, 203–204
- Alkanolamines, 151
 in cuticle removers, 590
- Alkylamido alkylamines, in skin
 cleansers, 493
- Alkoxylated alcohols, in
 shampoos, 608
- Alkoxylated amines (*See*
 Surfactants, 201)
- Alkyl aryl sulfonates, microbial
 growth in, 281
- Alkyl benzoate, in
 antiperspirants/deodorants,
 451, 456
- Alkyl dimethicone, in
 moisturizers, 265
- Alkyl dimethicone copolyols, in
 foundation makeups, 536
- Alkyl ether sulfates
 as anionic surfactant, 491
 in shampoos, 602–604
 in surfactants, 199, 200, 199
- Alkyl galactomannan
 in emulsions, 226
 in foundation makeup, 538
- Alkyl glucosides (*See*
 Surfactants)
 in skin cleansers, 494
- Alkyl halides, in hairs, 66
- Alkyl methicone, in foundation
 makeups, 541
- Alkyl phenoxyethanols,
 microbial growth in, 281
- Alkyl phosphates, as anionic
 surfactant, 491
- Alkyl silanes, in foundation
 makeups, 542
- Alkyl substituted amino acids,
 196, 609
- Alkyl sulfates
 as anionic surfactant, 491
 in emulsions, 227
 microbial growth in, 281
 in shampoos, 602–604
 in skin cleansers, 488
 in surfactants, 192, 199–200
- Alkyl titanate, in foundation
 makeup, 542
- Alkyl triethoxysilane, in
 foundation makeups, 530
- Alkylacrylate cross polymers, in
 emulsions, 222
- Alkylamido alkyl amines, in
 surfactants, 196
- Alkylamines, in surfactants, 201
- Alkylated amino acids, in skin
 cleansers, 493
- Alkylauryl sulfonates
 as anionic surfactant, 491
 in surfactants, 198, 199
- Alkylene dihalides, in permanent
 waves, 699
- Alkylether sulfonates, in
 surfactants, 199
- Alkylimidazolines, in
 surfactants, 201
- All-purpose creams, 360
- Allantoin
 in after-shave products, 516,
 518
 in antiperspirants/deodorants,
 451
 in hair setting/styling
 products, 641
 in over-the-counter remedies,
 402, 403
- Allergic reactions
 in ocular tissues and eyes,
 84–85
 in skin, 15, 758–759
- Allergic contact dermatitis,
 758–759
- Alloantigen, UV-mediated
 immunosuppression and,
 32
- Almond glycerides, in hair
 setting/styling products,
 640, 641, 664
- Almond oil, 329
- Aloe vera, 311, 320, 472, 504
- Alopecia, 43, 44
- Alopecia androgenetica, 44
- Alopecia areata, 44
- Alpha hydroxy acid usage, 34,
 132, 138, 379, 468, 471
- Alpha lipoic acid, as antioxidant,
 256
- Alpha tocopherol, as antioxidant,
 306
- Alpha-methylheptadecyl glyceryl
 ether (GE), 328
- Alpha-olefin sulfonates (AOS),
 in shampoos, 604
- Alum nail strengthener, 594
- Alumina toothpaste, 730
- Aluminum acetate, 412
- Aluminum chlorhydrate, in
 shaving preparations,
 513
- Aluminum chloride, in
 antiperspirants and
 deodorants, 440, 441, 442,
 447, 448
- Aluminum chlorohydrate
 (ACH), 440–442, 447, 448,
 451
- Aluminum dichlorohydrate, 441,
 442, 447, 448
- Aluminum hydroxide gel, 402,
 403
- Aluminum hydroxide, abrasive
 in toothpastes, 730
- Aluminum lakes in mascaras,
 563
- Aluminum magnesium
 hydroxide stearate,
 thickener, 245–246
- Aluminum salts, in after-shave
 products, 517
- Aluminum sesquichlorohydrate,
 in antiperspirants and
 deodorants, 441, 442, 447,
 448
- Aluminum silicates in
 emulsions, 225
- Aluminum sulfate, 412
 in antiperspirants and
 deodorants, 441, 442, 447,
 448
 in nail strengtheners, 594
- Aluminum zirconium
 chlorohydrate-GLY (AZG),
 440–441, 448, 452–455
 octachlorohydrate, 441, 442,
 447, 448
 pentachlorohydrate, 441, 442,
 447, 448
 tetrachlorohydrate, 441, 442,
 447, 448
 tetrachlorohydrate, 453
 trichlorohydrate, 441, 442,
 447, 448
- Amaranth, 317

- Amides and microbial growth
in, 281
in surfactants, 203
- Amines, 134, 138
in foundation makeups, 534
in surfactants, 199, 201, 203
- Amine oxides
in shampoos, 606, 607, 622
in skin cleansers, 494
in surfactants, 204
- Amino acids
acylated, 197 (*See also*
Surfactants)
alkyl substituted, 196
in foundation makeups, 530
in hair, 46–48, 67, 68
as humectants, 365
as components of natural
moisturizing factor (NMF),
267
in skin care products, 365
- Amino derivatives, 134, 138
- Amino-2-hydroxytoluene, in
permanent hair colors, 689
- Aminoanthraquinones, in hair
colorants/dyes, 676,
679–680
- Aminobenzoic acid, in
sunscreens, 417, 420
- Aminoethylpropanediol, in
semipermanent hair colors,
682
- Aminomethane, in permanent
waves, 699
- t*-4-Aminomethyl-
cyclohexanecarboxylic acid
(*t*-AMCHA), 386
- Aminomethyl propanol, in hair
setting/styling products,
644, 659, 660–662, 665,
688
- m*-Aminophenol, in permanent
hair colors, 684, 689, 690
- o*-Aminophenol, in permanent
hair colors, 683
- p*-Aminophenol, in permanent
hair colors, 683
- Aminoplastic packaging, 880
- Ammonia, in permanent hair
colors, 689
- Ammonium alum, use in nail
strengtheners, 594
- Ammonium bicarbonate, 705,
706
- Ammonium bisulfite, in hair
straighteners, 713
- Ammonium carbonate, in
permanent waves, 700
- Ammonium chloride
in shampoos, 625
in skin cleansers, 497
in surfactants, 201
- Ammonium hydroxide, 705, 706
in hair setting/styling
products, 662
in permanent hair colors, 690
in permanent waves, 700
- Ammonium laureth sulfate, in
skin cleansers, 497
- Ammonium lauryl sulfate, in
shampoos, 625, 629
- Ammonium lauryl
sulfosuccinate, in acne
products, 464
- Ammonium thioglycolate, 705,
706
- Amodimethicone, in hair
setting/styling products, 655
- Amorphous hydrocarbon waxes,
in lipsticks, 549
- Amphiphilic surfactants,
187–189, 208, 214, 232
- Amphoteric surfactants, 195, 196
alkylamido alkylamines as in,
493
alkylated amino acids in, 493
in emulsions, 217 (*t*)
in skin cleansers, 493
in shampoos, 608–609
- Amyl acetate, in nail polishes,
579
- Amylase, microbial growth in,
281
- Anagen (active) phase of hair
growth, 41–42, 42
- Anagen effluvium, 44
- Analgesic preparations, external,
143
- Androgens and hair, 43
- Anhydrosorbitol, in shampoos,
607
- Anhydrous (wax-based) blush,
562
- Anhydrous calcium chloride, in
permanent waves, 704
- Anhydrous formulations of
foundation makeups, 526,
530, 541–543
- Anhydrous mascara, 564, 565
- Anhydrous oils, in skin care
products, 361
- Anhydrous systems of
rheological additives, 243
- Animal lipids, 329–331
- Animal rights, U.S. regulation
and, 129
- Animal testing, 768–769
status in labeling, 159,
161–162
- Anionic surfactants, 195,
191–192, 196–200, 208
in emulsions, 216, 217 (*t*)
isethionates in, 493
micelle formation in, 191
microbial growth in, 281
phosphates in, 493
in shampoos, 602–606, 602
in skin cleansers, 490–493,
490
in shaving preparations, 511
in soaps, 492
sulfates in, 492
sulfonates in, 492–493
- Annatto, 316, 317
- Annexes of Cosmetic Directive,
E.U. regulation of
cosmetics, 149, 153–155
- Anterior chamber of eyes, 80
- Anthocyanidin antioxidants, 255,
317
- Anthocyanin, 316
- Antibacterial cleansing cream,
464
- Antistatic agents in hair
setting/styling products, 639
- Antiwrinkle creams, 377–379
- Antibacterial mouthwashes, 745
- Anticalculus agents in
toothpastes, 96, 736
- Anticholinergic activity
mechanism of sweat
reductions, 440
- Antidandruff shampoos and
lotions, 142, 165, 630,
408–412
- Antifrizz gel, 646
- Antimelanogenic skin whitening
agents, 396 (*t*)

- Antimicrobials, 142, 144–145
 surfactants as, 193, 201–202
 preservatives, 273
 in acne products, 467–468
 in mouthwashes, 748
 in skin care products, 362, 368
 in skin cleansers, 495, 496
 in toothpastes, 727, 736
- Antioxidants, 247–259, 378, 385
 acids and, 248
 alkalis and, 248
 alpha lipoic acid as, 256
 anthocyanidin as, 255
 apigenin as, 255
 arbutin as, 252
 ascorbic acid as, 255–256
 ascorbyl palmitate as, 256
 auto-oxidation reactions in, 249
 beta carotene as, 257
 BHA as, 252
 BHT as, 252
 botanicals as sources of, 312, 312 (*t*)
t-butyl hydroquinone as, 252
 caffeic acid as, 256
 carotenoids as, 256, 257
 catalase as, 256
 catechin as, 255
 chain propagation reactions in, 249
 chlorogenic acid as, 256
 cyanidin as, 255
 cysteine hydrochloride as, 256
 desferrioximine as, 249
 diosmin as, 255
 dithiothreitol as, 256
 EDTA as, 249
 in emulsions, 231
 enzymes as, 256
 epicatechin as, 255
 epicatechin gallate as, 255
 epigallocatechin as, 255
 epigallocatechin gallate as, 255
 Fenton reaction in, 250 in, 251
 ferulic acid as, 256
 flavonoids as, 253–255
 free radical formation in, 248–249
 gallic acid as, 256
 genistein as, 255
 glutathione as, 256
 gossypol as, 252
 Haber/Weiss reaction in, 251
 hesperidine as, 255
 hydrogen peroxide in, 250, 251
 hydroperoxides in, 248, 249
 hydroquinone as, 252
 hydroxyanisole as, 252
 hydroxyl radical in, 249–251
 isoflavones as, 255
 kaempferol as, 255
 kojic acid as, 252
 lipid peroxide (LOOH) in, 251
 lipid peroxy radicals (LOO[•]), 252
 malvidin as, 255
 myricetin as, 255
 naringin as, 255
 nordihydroguaiaretic acid as, 252, 253
 one-electron oxidation and, 249
 oxygen reactions and, 247
 peroxide value (POV) for, 258
 peroxides in, 248, 250
 phenolic acids as, 256
 phenolic antioxidants in, 251–253
 phospholipids as, 257
 photo-oxidation and, 250
 phytates as, 249
 plant-derived antioxidants in, 253
 protocatechuic acid as, 256
 quercetin as, 255
 reactive oxygen species (ROS) actions in, 250–251, 258
 resorcylic acid as, 256
 reversing photoaging of skin with, 34
 rosmarinic acid as, 252, 253
 selection criteria/recommendations for, 257–258
 in shaving preparations, 507
 singlet oxygen in, 249–250
 in shampoos, 623–624
 in skin care, 362, 372, 373
 stability and, 247
 sulfur as, 256
 superoxide in, 249, 250, 251, 256
 temperature effects on, 249
 thiodipropionic acid as, 256
 thioglycolic acid as, 256
 tocopherol as, 252, 253
 trolox as, 252, 253
 type I oxidative reactions, 247–249
 type II oxidative reactions, 250–251
 ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 247–248, 250, 256
 unsaturated vs.
 polyunsaturated materials in, 258
 use of, 251
 vitamin E as, 252
 xanthines as, 256
- Antiperspirants and deodorants, 119, 120, 142, 144, 164, 204, 437–457
 aerosol/pump spray type, 450–451
 aluminum chloride in, 440, 441, 442, 447, 448
 aluminum chlorohydrate (ACH) in, 440–442, 447, 448
 aluminum dichlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448
 aluminum sesquichlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448
 aluminum sulfate in, 441, 442, 447, 448
 aluminum zirconium chlorohydrate-GLY (AZG) in, 440–441, 448
 aluminum zirconium octachlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448
 aluminum zirconium pentachlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448
 aluminum zirconium tetrachlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448

- Antiperspirants and deodorants
(*cont.*)
aluminum zirconium
trichlorohydrate in, 441,
442, 447, 448
analytical evaluation of,
448–449
anticholinergic activity
mechanism of sweat
reductions, 440
axillary sweat measurement
protocols for, 444–446
bacteria associated with
perspiration and odor in,
439
clinical evaluation of,
442–443, **443**, 447
criteria for, 449
deodorancy in, 446–447
deodorant formulations,
455–456
drug classification of
antiperspirants, 437, 449
efficacy of, 441, 442–443,
443
electropositive charge
mechanism of sweat
reductions, 440
extrudable gel type, 454–455
formulations of, 449–456
ingredients for, 441, 447–448
keratin plug mechanism of
sweat reductions, 440
leaky hose mechanism of
sweat reductions, 440
modified occlusive plug
mechanism of sweat
reductions, 440
molding/filling, 845–846
occlusive plug mechanism of
sweat reductions, 440
odor masking/disguise
techniques in, 446
odor prevention techniques in,
446
odor reduction/removal
techniques in, 446
oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions,
453
perspiration physiology and,
438–441
reducing sweat, mechanisms
for, 439–441
rheological additives for, 240,
244, 245
roll-on type, 453–454
safety of, 441
silicones in, 450
soft solid type, 454–455
solid/stick type, 451–453
suspending agents in, 451
sweat composition and,
438–439
triclosan in, 455
United States regulation
(OTC) of, 441–442
water-in-silicone emulsions,
453
Antiseptics
in hand washes, 405
in mouthwashes, 747
in skin products, 403–407
Aphthous ulcers (canker sores),
92, 106
Apigenin, 255, 317
Apocrine glands, 12, 18, 80,
438–439
Appendageal structures of skin,
11–13
Apricot kernel oil, 308
Arachidyl behenate, in
moisturizers, 265
Arachidyl propionate, in
antiperspirants/deodorants,
452
Arbutin, 252, 312, 397
Argillaceous earth (clay) masks,
473–478
Aromatherapy, 389
Aromatics, in nail polishes, 578
Arrector pili muscle of hair, **40**
Arsenic, in hair, 49
Articles of Cosmetics Directive
in E.U. regulation of
cosmetics, 149
Artificial nail use, 74, 75, 598
Aryl sulfonamide resin, in nail
polishes, 577
Ascorbic acid, 368
as antioxidant, 255–256, 312
Ascorbyl palmitate
as antioxidant, 256
in emulsifier, 221
in lipsticks, 551
Aspergillus, as test of
preservative efficacy, 297
Associative structures in
surfactants, 191
Astringent cleanser, 465
Astringents, 142, 412, 465
in after-shave products, 516,
517
in masks, 477
Athlete's foot products, 300
Atmos dispensing system, 346
Atrophy of skin, 33, 34
Auto-oxidation reactions in
antioxidants, 249
Auto-oxidative dyes, 690–691
Auxiliaries in emulsions, 212,
225–226
Avobenzene in sunscreens, 142,
417–418, 420
Avocado wax, 308
Axial flow, 802, **803**
Axillary region hair, 41
Azadioxabicyclooctane, in
permanent waves, 699
Azelaic acid, 397
Azulene, 317
Baby (tearless) shampoos, 608,
625, 626
Baby powder, 120, 131
Bacteria associated with
perspiration and odor, 439
Bacteria vs. preservatives,
274–276, 284
Bacterial or microbial flora of
mouth, 92, 93–94, 95, 98,
103–105
Bacteroides forsythus as agent of
periodontitis in oral care,
101
Bad breath, 103–105
Bag-in-a-can aerosol systems,
345
Ball mills, 832–835, **833**
Banana, 310
Bandrowski's base for hair
colorants/dyes, 685
Banned substances, in E.U.
regulation of, 150, 151
Barium hydroxide in
depilatories, 721
Barium salts in permanent
waves, 699

- Barrier function of skin, 9,
16–17, 351, 354–357, **355**,
367
vs. emulsions, 232
- Basal cell carcinoma, 28
- Basal lamina in skin, 5
- Basal layer of epidermis in
skin, 4
- Base nail polish, 584
- Basement membrane in skin, 3,
387, 388
- Basement membrane of hair, **40**
- Basil oil, 313
- Batch emulsion processor,
819–822, **820**
batch numbers in labeling,
157–158
- Batch turnover rate, 848
- Bath capsules, 131
- Bath oil, 131, 222
- Bath powder, 120, 131, 164
- Bath preparations, 164, 166
- Bath salts, 131
- Bath soaps, 131
- Bayberry wax, 309
- Beard softeners, 131, 501–502
- Beau's lines, 76
- Beeswax
in eyeliners, 569
in foundation makeups, 537
in hair setting/styling
products, 664
in lipsticks, 549
in mascaras, 564, 565, 566
in skin care, 370, 371, 372,
376
- Bending properties of hair, 50,
56
- Bentonite, 118, 378
in acne products, 464, 466
in emulsions, 225
in masks, 473, 474–476, 478,
482
rheological properties of,
244
- Benzalkonium chloride, 201
in nail strengtheners, 595
in over-the-counter remedies,
404
as preservative, 286, 287, 289
- Benzene, in permanent hair
colors, 683
- Benzene ring sunscreens, 418
- Benzethonium chloride, 286, 287
- Benzoic acid, 749
in foundation makeups, 536
in mouthwashes, 749, 750,
751
as preservative, 286, 287, 289,
295, 301, 312
- Benzoin in nail polishes, 577
- Benzophenone
in hair setting/styling
products, 641
in nail polishes, 582
in shampoos, 624
- Benzoyl peroxide
in acne products, 465–468
in masks, 477
- Benzyl alcohol
in foundation makeups, 535
as preservative, 286, 287, 295,
312
- Bergamot oil, 313
- Berloque dermatitis, 35
- Beta carotene, 316
as antioxidant, 257
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and,
24
- Beta endorphin, ultraviolet (UV)
radiation and, 27, 31
- Beta hydroxy acid, 471
- Beta sitosterol, 330
- Betaglucan, as hydrophilic
polymer, 268
- Betaine
use in skin cleansers, 494,
497–499
use in shampoos, 608–609,
622
use in shaving preparations,
504
use in surfactants, 202
- Betanines, 316, 317
- BHA/BHT
antioxidants, 252, 253
in lipsticks, 551
in shampoos, 623
- Bicarbonate, in saliva, 91
- Bilirubin, ultraviolet (UV)
radiation and, 24
- Binders, 856–857
in foundation makeups, 538,
539
- Bioflavonoids, 317
- Bisabolol, 306, 504
in after-shave products, 516
in skin cleansers, 496
- Bismuth oxychloride
in blushers, 561
in eyeshadows, 570, 571
in foundation makeups, 524,
529, 538
in lipsticks, 546
in mascaras, 563
in nail polishes, 581
- Bisulfites, in hair products, 63
- Bithionol, 134
- Black currant seed oil, 309, 329
- Black pepper oil, 313
- Black walnut, 318
- Bleaches
hair, 67, 131, 692–694
nails, 591–592
skin bleaches, 394–398
skin bleaches, masks, 477
teeth, 103
toothpaste, 735
- Blending equipment, 853–857
- Blink reflex in ocular tissues and
eyes, 80, 83
- Blood flow testing, 776
- “Blooming” gels, 509–510
- Blow-dry lotion, 643
- Blue gardenia, 317
- “Blue sky” research in new
product developments, 112
- Blusher pencils, 567–568
- Blushers and rouge (foundation
makeup), 131, 560–562
(*See also* Surfactants;
Colorants)
anhydrous (wax-based) blush,
562
colorants for, 560
pressed powder blush,
560–562
- Body creams, 382
- Body of hair, 632
- Body lotion, 131
- Body powder, 164
- Body shampoo/wash, 144, 497,
498
- Borage seed oil, 329
- Borate, in hair setting/styling
products, 662
- Borax, in permanent waves, 700

- Boric acid, as preservative, 286, 287
- Borohydride, for hair reduction, 63
- Boronitride
in eyeshadows, 570
in foundation makeups, 524, 529, 530, 540, 541
- Botanicals, 305–321
antioxidants from, 312, 312 (*t*)
available sources of, 306
colorants from, 316–319, 316 (*t*)
defining botanicals, 305–306
dry extracts of, 307
emulsifiers from, 311
extracts of, 306–308
fragrant plant constituents of, 313–315
in hair setting/styling products, 641
lipid plant constituents as, 308–310
lipid sources of, 329–330
liquid extracts of, 307
moisturizing agents from, 310–311
“natural product” defined, 305–306
“naturally derived” defined, 305
“nature identical” defined, 306
nonlipid plant constituents as, 310–313
plant-derived raw materials as, 308–310
preservatives from, 307, 312
raw material identification in, 307–308
skin-soothing/beneficial plant extracts, 319–320, 368
soft extracts of, 307
sunscreens from, 313
thickeners from, 311
UV absorbers from, 313
water-soluble fragrances from, 315
- Bottles, plastic bottles, 878
- Bowman’s layer in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
- Brazil nut oil, 309
- Breath-freshening properties of toothpastes, 742
- Breath-freshening properties of mouthwashes, 752
- Breath mints, 104, 105
- Breath sprays/drops, 104, 105, 131, 753
- Brevibacterium* spp., perspiration odor and, 439
- Brilliantine, 664
- British Pharmacopoeia (BP), 297, 298
- Brittleness of nails, 75
- Bromates use
in hair, 67
in permanent waves, 704
- Bromide, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Bromo-2-nitropropane, 134, 286, 287
- Bromo-5-nitro, 286, 287
- Bromoacid solvents for lipstick, 547, 548
- Brookfield Viscometer to measure rheological additive, 238–239
- Brownian motion, 225–227, 792
- Brucella*, as contaminant, 283
- Brushing teeth, 96, 98, 742–743
- Brushless shave creams, 510–511
- Bubble bath, 496
- Buffered cold wave solution, 705
- Buffers
in mouthwashes, 749
in skin care products, 362
- Buffing powders for nails, 596–597
- Bulb, follicular bulb of hair, 39, 40
- Bulbar conjunctiva of eyes, 80
- Bunte Salt in hair wavings, 63–65, 698
- Burns to skin, 20
- Butane propellant, 339, 653, 660–662
- Butane diol, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Buteth 16, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Butoxyethyl stearate, in skin cleansers, 497
- Butters, botanicals as source of, 308
- Butyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
- sec butyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
- t*-Butylcatechol, 397
- t*-Butyl ester, in hair setting/styling products, 644, 659, 661
- t*-Butyl hydroquinone as antioxidant, 252
- Butyl hydroxytoluene, in shaving preparations, 507
- Butyl lactate, in nail polishes, 579
- Butyl maleate, in hair setting/styling products, 659
- Butyl resorcinol, 397
- Butyl stearate, in skin care, 380
- Butylaminoethyl methacrylate, in hair setting/styling products, 661
- Butylated PVP, in hair setting/styling products, 664
- Butylene glycol
in acne products, 464
in eyeliners, 569
in foundation makeups, 534, 537
in hair setting/styling products, 665
as humectant, 269
in masks, 477, 480, 481
as preservative, 294
in shampoos, 623
in shaving preparations, 503
in skin care, 380, 383
- Butylparaben
in hair setting/styling products, 649
as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- C-30-40 alkyl methicone foundation makeup, 541
- C-S scission in hair chemistry, 67, 68
- C12-15 alkyl benzoate, as emulsifier, 221
- C30-40 alkyl dimethicone, in moisturizers, 265
- Cabbage rose water, 315
- Cadmium, in hair, 49

- Cafe au lait mixture, 791
- Caffeic acid as antioxidant, 256, 312
- Cake (block) mascara, 564
- Calamine, in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
- Calcitonin gene-related peptide, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Calcium
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94
 in hair, 49
 as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
 oral care, 97
 in saliva, 91
 in skin care products, 356
- Calcium carbonate
 in blushers, 561
 in dental products, 739
 in foundation makeups, 538
 in toothpastes, 729
- Calcium chloride, in permanent waves, 704
- Calcium hydroxide
 in depilatories, 719, 720, 721
 in hair straighteners, 712
- Calcium in nails, 73
- Calcium in skin, 356
- Calcium in tooth, 90–91
- Calcium peroxide toothpaste, 730
- Calcium pyrophosphate toothpaste, 729
- Calcium silicate
 in eyeshadows, 571
 in foundation makeups, 529, 538
- Calcium thioglycolate, in depilatories, 719, 720
- Calculus (tartar) deposits on teeth, 93, 94, 96
- Callus, 20, 261
- Callus removers, 412–413
- Calorimetry to establish HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Camellia sinesis oil, 309, 312
- Camphor, in shaving preparations, 513
- Camphorated metacresol, in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Camphorated phenols in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Cancer of skin, 20
- Candelilla wax, 309
 in lipsticks, 549
 in mascaras, 565, 566
- Candida albicans*
 as contaminant, 283
 in nail infections, 75, 77
 in ocular tissues infections, 85
 as test of preservative efficacy, 297
 UV-mediated immunosuppression and, 32
- Canker sores in oral care, 92, 106
- Capacitance testing, 774–775
- Capillary flow and surfactants, 193–194
- Capillary in skin, 4
- Caprylic/capric triglyceride as emulsifier, 221
 in lipsticks, 548
 in skin cleansers, 498
- Caprylyl silane in foundation makeups, 541
- Caps and lids, 885–886
- Capsanthin, 316, 318
- Capsorubin, 316, 318
- Capsules, 120
- Captan, 286, 287
- Caramel, 318
- Carbohydrate esters in surfactants, 205–206
- Carbohydrate synthesis inhibitor, 397
- Carbohydrates
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94
 microbial growth in, 280
- Carbomer
 in after-shave products, 517
 in emulsions, 226
 in hair setting/styling products, 647, 650, 665
 in masks, 481
 in shampoos, 623
 in skin care, 375, 498, 499
 in toothpastes, 733
- Carbon black, in mascaras, 563
- Carboxyl groups, microbial growth in, 281
- Carboxylic acid
 in shampoos, 606
 in surfactants, 197–198, 206
- Carboxymethylcellulose, microbial growth in, 281
- Carcinogenic compounds, 147
- Carcinomas, 28
- Caries (decay) in tooth, 90, 92, 95–99
- Carmine, in mascaras, 563
- Carnauba wax, 309
 as emulsifier, 221
 in eyeliners, 569
 in eyeshadows, 571
 in hair setting/styling products, 652
 in lipsticks, 549
 in mascaras, 564, 565, 566
- Carotenes, 318, 368
- Carotenoids as antioxidants, 256–257
- Carrageenan
 in emulsions, 226
 in masks, 477, 481
 rheological properties of, 244
 in toothpastes, 732
- Carthamin, 318
- Casein, in masks, 481
- Castor oil, 309
 as emulsifier, 221
 in foundation makeups, 537
 in hair setting/styling products, 640, 641, 654, 664
 in lipsticks, 548
 in permanent waves, 700
 in shampoos, 622
- Catagen phase of hair growth, 41–42, 42
- Catalase as antioxidant, 256
- Cataracts, 28
- Catechin as antioxidant, 255
- Categories of OTC drugs, 142–143
- Categories of cosmetics, 131
- Cationic cellulose shampoo, 622
- Cationic quaternary antibacterials in mouthwashes, 748
- Cationic surfactants, 195, 200–202, 208
 in emulsions, 216, 217 (*t*), 218

- Cationic surfactants (*cont.*)
in masks, 478
as preservatives, 292
in shampoos, 609
- Caustic preparations for hair straighteners, 709–710
- Cavitation of liquids, 823
- Cedarwood oil, 313
- Cell membrane complex (CMC) of hair, 44, 44–46, 61
- Cellulase, microbial growth in, 281
- Cellulose, 119, 311
in acne products, 468
in hair setting/styling products, 644
as rheological additive, 244
in shampoos, 622, 623
in toothpastes, 737
- Cellulose gum
rheological properties of, 244
in foundation makeups, 533, 534, 535
in toothpastes, 732
- Cellulosics, 226, 243
- Celosia, 317
- Cemento-enamel junction in tooth, 89, 89, 90
- Cementosomes (*See* Odland bodies)
- Cementum in tooth, 89, 89, 101–102
- Ceramic composites, in foundation makeups, 529
- Ceramides, 6, 9, 16, 327–329
- Ceresin
eyeshadow, 571
lipstick, 549
in skin care, 373
- Cerotic acid, in skin care, 370
- Ceteareth-20
in acne products, 468
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451
- Cetearyl alcohol
in acne products, 468
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
in emulsions, 227, 228, 229
in skin care, 374
- Ceteth-8, as emulsifier, 219
- Ceteth-20
as emulsifier, 219
hair setting/styling products, 644
- Ceteth-25, in skin care, 380
- Cetrimide, as preservative, 290
- Cetrimonium chloride (CTAC)
in hair setting/styling products, 640, 643
in shampoos, 616–617, 629
- Cetyl acetate
in acne products, 467
in shaving preparations, 504
- Cetyl alcohol
in depilatories, 719
in eyeliners, 569
in foundation makeups, 534
in hair straighteners, 711, 712
in shampoos, 623
in skin care, 372, 373, 377, 382, 384
surfactants, 206
- Cetyl dimethicone, in foundation makeups, 537
- Cetyl esters, in skin care, 371, 498
- Cetyl hydroxyethyl cellulose in emulsions, 222
- Cetyl iso-octanoate, in skin care, 381
- Cetyldimethicone copolyol at water/oil interface in emulsions, 229
- Cetylpyridinium chloride (CPC),
in cuticle softeners, 591
in oral care, 100, 737, 748, 750
as preservative, 293
- Cetyltrimonium chloride, in shampoos, 629
- Chain propagation reactions in antioxidants, 249
- Chalk
as contamination source, 277
preservative action on, 294
in shaving preparations, 514
in toothpastes, 729
- Chamomile, 306, 313, 315, 317, 320, 397, 504
- Chelating agents, in skin care, 362, 375, 383
- Chemical heating methods (heating packages), 701
- Chemical properties of hair, 61–69
- Chemical reaction of pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- Chemically treated hair and shampoo, 617
- China clay in masks, 473
- Chitosan, as hydrophilic polymer, 268
- Chlorbutanol, 152
- Chlorhexidine
as preservative, 286, 287, 295
as preventive of gingivitis in oral care, 100
in toothpastes, 737
- Chloride, in saliva, 91
- Chlorine dioxide in mouthwashes, 749
- Chloroacetic acid, in surfactants, 202
- Chlorofluorocarbon propellants, 134, 340
- Chloroform, 134
- Chlorogenic acid as antioxidant, 256
- Chloroisocyanurates nail bleach, 592
- Chloromethyl isothiazolone shampoo, 624
- p*-Chloro-*m*-cresol, 286–287
- Chlorophyll, 250, 316, 318
- Chlorophyllin copper, 318
- Chloroxyleneol
in acne products, 464
as preservative, 286, 287
in skin cleansers, 496
- Chlorphenesin, as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Cholecalciferol, 368
- Cholesterol
in nail creams, 593
in shaving preparations, 511
in skin, 13, 16, 353
- Cholesteryl oleate, in moisturizers, 265
- Chondroitin sulfate, in skin, 18
- Chromium oxide
in lipsticks, 546
in mascaras, 563
- Chromophores in skin, 23
- Chronologic aging of skin, 20–22, 21 (*t*), 263
- Chymase, 15
- Ciliary bodies of eyes, 80
- Cinnamon, 314

- Cinoxate as sunscreen, 417, 420
 Citrates in nail polishes, 577
 Citric acid, 628
 in acne products, 465, 468
 in hair setting/styling products, 641
 in lipsticks, 551
 in nail bleaches, 592
 in permanent hair colors, 690
 in shampoos, 624, 625
 in skin cleansers, 497, 498, 499
 Citrulline in hair, 48
Cladosporium spp., 276, 283
 Clarifying agents in shampoos, 623
 Clary sage oil, 314
 Clays
 in emulsions, 225
 in foundation makeups, 535, 538
 in mascaras, 565, 566
 in masks, 471, 472–478, 482
 in nail polishes, 583
 as rheological additive, 235, 240, 243, 244
 in skin care, 381
 in toothpastes, 733
 Cleaning (basic) shampoo formula, 625
 Cleansers, 118, 166
 Cleansing and moisturizing liquid, 499
 Cleansing creams, lotions, liquids, 131, 360
 Cleansing pads, 131
 Clear emulsions, 212, 230, 232
 Clear facial cleanser, 464
 Clear nail base coat, 584
 Clear nail top coat, 585
 Climbazole, in dandruff products, 408, 409, 411
 Clindamycin, in acne products, 467
 Closures, 885–886
 Clove oil, 314
 Clover, 319, 320
 Coal tar, 151, 408, 409, 411
 Coalescence of droplets in emulsions, 218
 Coarseness of skin, 22, 33, 34
 Cocamide DEA, 628
 in semipermanent hair colors, 682
 in shampoos, 622, 625, 627
 in skin cleansers, 497
 Cocamide MEA, in skin cleansers, 498
 Cocamidopropyl amineoxide, in skin cleansers, 497
 Cocamidopropyl betaine
 in dandruff products, 410
 in permanent hair color, 690
 in shampoos, 603, 625, 629
 in skin cleansers, 497, 498, 499
 Cocamidopropyl hydroxysultaine, 626
 Cocamidopropyl surfactants, 201, 204, 608
 Cochineal mascara, 563
 Coco caprylate/caprates
 in makeups, 539, 542, 548
 in lipsticks, 548
 Cocoa butter, 309
 as emulsifier, 221
 comedogenicity of, 463
 in lipsticks, 550
 in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
 Cocomonium chloride, 630
 Coconut alcohol in depilatories, 719
 Coconut fatty acid, in shaving preparations, 502, 510
 Coconut oil, 309
 as emulsifier, 221
 in shaving preparations, 505
 Cocoyl hydrolyzed collagen, in hair straighteners, 713
 Cocoyl alcohol, in skin cleansers, 499
 Cocoyl sarcosine, in skin cleansers, 497
 Codispensing systems, 347
 Cod liver oil, in shaving preparations, 505
 Cohesive mixing, 788
 Cold creams, 360, 370, 510, 593
 Cold filling of aerosols, 343
 Cold sore treatments, 401–403
 Cold waving processes, 701–705
 COLIPA, 129, 130, 150, 155, 160, 161
 Collagen, 18
 as hydrophilic polymer, 268
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
 in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
 in skin, 3, 15, 18, 22, 34, 387–388
 Collagenase in skin, 15
 Collapsible tubes, 881–882
 Colloid mills, 223, 241, 830–832, 831
 Colloidal kaolin, in masks 473
 Colloidal silica
 in nail white, 595–596
 in shaving preparations, 514
 Cologne, 131
 Color cosmetics 523–572
 blushers (*See* Blushers and rouge), 560
 colorants in, 523–524
 eye makeup (*See* Eye makeup; Mascara; Eyeliner; Eye shadow), 563
 eyebrow makeup, 566–569
 eyeliner, 566–569
 foundation or skin colorants (*See* Foundation makeup), 524–543
 history of, 523
 lipsticks (*See* Lipsticks), 543
 mascara, 564–566, 564
 regulation of, 523
 Colorants, use of, 524, 527, 528, 529–531, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539–542, 543–548, 550, 560, 561, 563, 569, 570, 571, 573, 580–582, 838–839
 in aftershave, 516
 in blushers, 560
 botanicals as sources of, 316–319, 316 (*t*)
 comedogenicity of, 463
 E.U. regulation of, 151–152
 in eye makeups, 563
 in foundation makeups, 523–524, 529–531
 in hair colorants/dyes, 674, 674 (*t*)
 in hair setting/styling products, 641

- Colorants, use of (*cont.*)
International Color Handbook, CTFA, 152
Japan regulation of, 152, 169
in nail polishes, 580–582
in skin care products, 362, 382
in toothpastes, 726, 735
U.S. regulation and, 135–136
- Colorimetry testing, 775
- Coloring rinses, 131
- Combing damage to hair, **621**
- Comedogenesis in acne, **460**
- Comedogenicity of materials in foundation makeups, 535
- Comedones (*See* Acne etiology)
- Comfrey, 320
- Competition assessment in new product developments, 113
- Compounding rules for new product development, 123–124
- Comprehensive Licensing Standards (CLS), Japanese cosmetic regulation, 166
- Compressed gas propellant for aerosols, 343
- Compression molding, 881
- Computational fluid dynamics (CFD), 791
- Computational HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Computers and optimization of formulas, 125
- Concealer pencils, 567–568
- Conditioners/conditioning agents, 868
in hair colorants/dyes, 689
in hair care products, 616–617
in shampoos, 626–630
in shaving preparations, 506–507
- Conductance, 774
- Conjunctiva, 79, 81–82, **80**
- Connective tissue in nails, **72**
- Connective tissue in skin, **4**
- Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 146
- Contact dermatitis
allergic, 758–759
irritant, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
- Contact lens use and ocular tissues, 84, 86
- Contact urticaria (hives) in, 759–760
- Container size, 170
- Contamination of emulsions, 280
- Contents in labeling, 157
- Continuous high pressure homogenizers, 822–824, **822, 823**
- Continuous oil phase emulsions, 280
- Continuous stirred tank reactor (CSTR), 799, 850
- Cooling of emulsion products, 223, 866–868, 866
- Copolymers
in foundation makeups, 538
as rheological additive, 245
- Copper
effect on collagen synthesis, 18
in hair, 49
- Coriander oil, 314
- Corn oil, as emulsifier, 221
- Corn removers, 412–413
- Cornea, **80**, 82–84
- Corneal transparency, 84
- Corneal stroma in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
- Corrosion inhibitors in
in shaving preparations, 508
in toothpastes, 734–735
- Cortex of hair, 39, **40**, 41, **44**, 45–48, 50–51, 68
- Corynebacterium* spp., bacteria associated with perspiration odor, 439
- Cosmeceuticals, 149
- Cosmetic adulteration, 132–133
- Cosmetic advertising practices, 146
- Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR) program, 134
- Cosmetic manufacturing, 787–874
- Cosmetic skin care products, 117, 131, 165, 357–361, 374, 376
- Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA), 129, 145, 297, 298, 303
- Cosmetic type mouthwashes, 745
- Cosmetics Directive in E.U. regulation of, 147–149
- Cosolvents, in hair setting/styling products, 638
- Cost of products in new product developments, 115
- Cotton seed oil, 309
comedogenicity of, 463
as emulsifier, 221
- Country of origin in labeling, 140, 159
- Couplers in hair colorants/dyes, 684, **684**
- Covalent cross-link bonds in hair, 47, 47 (*t*), 61–62
- Cream, filling, 841–843
- Cream gel for hair relaxer, 650
- Cream rinses, 61, 201
- Cream-powder (anhydrous) foundations, 541–543
- Creaming of emulsions, 218, 225
- Creams, 117, 131, 165, 358–361
- Creaseproof eyeshadow stick, 571
- Creatine, as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Crimping of valve to container in aerosols, 338, 339 (*t*)
- Crinkling of skin, 378
- Critical micelle concentration (CMC)
preservatives vs., 292
in shampoos, 603, 612–613
in surfactants, 189–190, **190**
- Crocetin, 316, 318
- Crocin, 318
- Crocus, 316, 318
- Cross-linking in permanent waves, 699
- Crotonates, in hair setting/styling products, 660
- Crown of tooth, 89, **89**
- CTFA Color Handbook* and Japanese regulations, 169
- Cucumber juice, 306, 310
- Cumulative irritancy test, 771
- Curcumin, 316, 318
- Curl patterns in hair, 48, 636
- Curling mascaras, 566
- Curvature of hair, 50

- Cutaneous malignant melanoma, 33
- Cutaneous reaction patterns to cosmetics, 756 (*t*)
- Cuticle of hair, 39, **40**, **44**, 45–46, **45**, 50–51, 55, 60, 61, 620
- Cuticle of nails, 71, 72, 73, 589
- Cuticle massage cream, 593
- Cuticle remover, 589–591
- Cuticle softener, 131, 591
- Cyanide, in hair, 63
- Cyanidin, as antioxidant, 255
- Cyclic growth activity of hair, 41–42, **42**
- Cyclomethicone, 385
 - in after-shave products, 516
 - as emulsifier, 221
 - in eyeshadows, 571
 - in foundation makeups, 534, 535, 536, 537
 - in hair setting/styling products, 644, 659, 665
- Cyclopentasiloxane, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455
- Cyclotetrasiloxane, 453, 454, 455
- Cypress oil, 314
- Cysteic acid, 68
- Cysteine, in hair, 45–49, 61–64, 66, 68, 397
- Cysteine cold wave lotion, 706
- Cysteine HCl, 706
- Cysteine hydrochloride as antioxidant, 256
- Cytokeratins in skin, 7, 357
- Cytokines
 - absorption of UV, 29
 - in skin, 3, 10, 14–15, 357
- Damage to skin, 19–20
- Dandruff lotions (*See* Antidandruff shampoos and lotions)
- DEA lauryl sulfate, in skin cleansers, 497
- Deagglomeration, 828
- Deamination vs. preservatives, 275
- Decadiene cross-polymers, in hair setting/styling products, 647
- Decarboxylation vs. preservatives, 275
- Definition of cosmetics vs. drugs
 - E.U. regulation of, 148–149
 - Japanese regulation of, 163–165
 - U.S. regulation and, 130–131, 140–142, 393–394
- Defining the product during new product development, 121–122
- Deformation of hair, 51, 53
- Dehydration vs. preservatives, 275
- Dehydration zone in hair, **40**, 41
- Dehydroacetic acid
 - in foundation makeups, 536
 - as preservative, 286, 287, 295, 301
- Dehydrocholesterol (pro-vitamin D3), ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23
- Dehydrogenated tallow, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Delipidization by skin care products, 353–354
- Demineralization (by toothpastes), 742
- Dendritic pigment-synthesizing cells in skin, 4
- Dental pellicle of tooth, 91, 92–93
- Dental rinses, 131
- Dentifrices (*See* Toothpaste and dentifrices)
- Dentin of tooth in, 89–91, **89**, 101–102
- Dental tubules of tooth, 90–91, 102
- Denture cleansers, 743–745
- Deodorants (*See* Antiperspirants and deodorants)
- Deoxynojirimycin, 397
- Dephosphorylation vs. preservatives, 275
- Depilatories, 131, 164, 695, 711–721
 - chemical depilatories, 715–720
 - cream depilatory, 719
 - efficacy of, 721
 - electrolysis, 715
 - enzymes in, 720
 - epilation, 713
 - facial depilatories for
 - African-American men, 720
 - hydroxides as, 721
 - keratinase in, 720
 - mercaptans as, 717–718, 721
 - mercaptopropionic acid, 720
 - powder depilatory, 720
 - regulation of, 134–135
 - semi-fluid depilatory, 719
 - stannites as, 717
 - sulfides as, 716–717
 - thiglycolates as, 718, 720
 - thioglycerol as, 720
 - thiolactic acid as, 720
 - wax epilation, 713–714
- Dermal fibrils, 5
- Dermal papilla of hair, **40**, **40**
- Dermal sheath of hair, **40**
- Dermal-epidermal interactions in skin, 387–388
- Dermapan sulfate, 18
- Dermatitis
 - allergic contact dermatitis, 758–759
 - contact urticaria (hives), 759–770
 - irritant contact dermatitis, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
 - in nails, 74, 75
 - photoallergic, 760–761
 - phototoxic, 760–761
- Dermatologic assessment questionnaires in, 780–781
- Dermis, 3, **4**, 17–19, 351, 387
 - hair follicle and, 39, **41**
- Dermo-epidermal junction, 4–5
- Descemet's membrane, 83
- Desensitizing agents in toothpastes, 736
- Desferrioximine, 249
- Desmosine, 18
- Desmosomes, 5
- Desquamating layer of skin, 10
- Detackifiers in hair setting/styling products, 639
- Detergents, 131, 730–731
- Dewaxed dammar gum nail polish, 577
- Dextran, as hydrophilic polymer, 268

- Diagnosis of illness using nails, 71, 76–77
- Diammonium dithiodiglycolate, 705, 706
- Diamond dust, in nail polishes, 582
- Diazolidinyl urea
in eyeliners, 569
in foundation makeups, 533, 534
in hair setting/styling products, 643–645, 646, 649, 664, 665
- Dibasic sodium phosphate, 706
- Dibenzylidene sorbitol, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
- Dibutyl phthalate, in nail polishes, 579
- Dicalcium phosphate anhydrous toothpaste, 729
- Dicalcium phosphate dihydrate toothpaste, 729, 737
- Dicapryl maleate, in eyeshadows, 571
- Dicarboxylic acids, 386
- Dichlorobenzyl alcohol, 286, 287
- Dielectric water content (DEWC) of skin, 763
- Diet and acne, 461
- Diethanolamides, 604
- Diethanolamine (DEA), 134, 138, 151
in shampoos, 607
- Diethyl phthalate, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Diethylene glycol laurate, as emulsifier, 219
- Diethylene glycol stearate, as emulsifier, 219
- Dihydrogenated tallow shampoo, 627
- Dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) in skin, 11
- Diisopropyl adipate
in acne products, 468
in foundation makeups, 535
in hair setting/styling products, 649, 650, 665
- Diisopropyl sebacate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
- Dilatancy in rheology, 237, 237
- Dimer esters, in lipsticks, 548
- Dimethicone, 385
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 456
as emulsifier, 221
in eyeshadows, 570
in foundation makeups, 536, 540, 541
in hair setting/styling products, 640, 644, 650, 659, 660, 661, 664, 665
in moisturizers, 265
in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
in shampoos, 619, 626–629
in shaving preparations, 509
removal by shampoo, 619
- Dimethicone copolyol
in acne products, 465
in after-shave products, 517
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453, 454, 455
in dandruff products, 410
in foundation makeups, 534, 535
in hair setting/styling products, 655
in skin cleansers, 497
- Dimethoxane, as preservative, 286, 287
- Dimethoxy-3, 5-pyridinediamine, in permanent hair color, 684
- Dimethyldiallylammonium chloride, in shampoos, 622
- Dimethyl ether (DME)
in hair setting/styling products, 655, 660, 661
propellant for aerosols, 341
- Dimethyl phthalate hair setting/styling products, 640
- Dimethylamine, 201
- Dimethylaminoethylmethacrylate, 647
- Dimethylpabamidopropyl laurdiminium tosylate, 649
- Dimethylstearamine, 661
- Dimonium chloride, 201
- Dinitrofluorobenzene, test for immunosuppression, 32
- Dioctyl adipate, 452
- Dioctyl sebacate, 661
- Diosmin as antioxidant, 255
- Dioxane, 134
- Dioxybenzone in sunscreens, 417, 420–421
- Diphtheroids, as contaminants, 283
- Dipropylene glycol, 385
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453, 455
in shaving preparations, 503
in skin care, 375, 377, 383
- Directional frictional effect in hair, 45, 59–60
- Discoloration of nails, 77
- Discontinuous phase of oil in emulsions, 212, 218
- Diseases of skin, 17, 35
- Disodium cocamido MIPA sulfosuccinate, 496
- Disodium cocoamphodiacetate, 465
- Disodium EDTA
in foundation makeups, 534
in hair setting/styling products, 649
in skin cleansers, 498
- Disodium laureth sulfosuccinate, in acne products, 464
in skin cleansers, 496
- Disodium phosphate, 749
in hair straighteners, 713
in mouthwashes, 749
in shampoos, 629
- Disodium pyrophosphate, in toothpastes, 736
- Disorders of hair, 43–44
- Disperse phase of oil in emulsions, 212–214, 218
- Dispersers in rheological additives, 241
- Dispersion equipment, 819–822, **820**
- Dispersion fills, 841–843
- Dissociation and effectiveness of preservatives, 289–290
- Distributive mixing, 788
- Disulfide bond of hair, 40, 41, 62–67
permanent waves and, 696–698
- Dithiane in hair, 66
- Dithioethers permanent waves, 699

- Dithiol, in hair, 63
 Dithionite, in hair, 63
 Dithiothreitol as antioxidant, 256
 DLVO electrical double layer concept in emulsions, 218
 DMAPA hair setting/styling products, 655, 665
 DMDH hydantoin mascaras, 566
 DMDM hydantoin
 in dandruff products, 410
 as preservative, 286, 287
 in shampoos, 624
 DMDMH hair setting/styling products, 650
 DNA, absorption spectrum for UV, 28, 31, 33
 Dog rose seed oil, 309
 Dorsal nail plate in nails, 72
 Douches, 131
 Draize test, 768
 Drier for nail polish, 586, 597–598
 Droplet or globule formation in emulsions, 212, 218
 Drug permeation action enhanced by surfactants, 208
 Dry continuous processing, 870–873
 Dry extracts of botanicals, 307
 Dry eye conditions in ocular tissues and eyes, 85
 Dry mixing systems, 852–865
 Dry mouth (xerostomia), 105–106
 Dry nail polish, 596–597
 Dry shaving preparations, 511–513
 Dry skin, 263–264, 270
 Dry spray dispensers, 346–347
 Drying time of nail polishes, 574, 577, 578, 597–598
 DTPA, 706
 Dusting powders, 131
 Dye removers, 164
 Dye uptake by hair, 48
 Dyes (*See* Colorants; Hair coloring/dyes)
- Eccrine sweat glands, 11–12, 18, 438–439
 EDTA
 as antioxidant, 249
 in hair colorants/dyes, 688
 in hair setting/styling products, 642
 in permanent hair colors, 689
 in shampoos, 624
 in shaving preparations, 508
 Eicosanoids, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
 Elastic properties in rheological additives, 238
 Elasticity of (Young's modulus) hair, 53
 Elasticity testing of skin, 774
 Elastin in skin, 15, 18, 34
 Elder, 316
 Electric shavers, preelectric shave lotions and, 511–513
 Electrical charge in emulsions, 217–218
 Electrical double layer formation in emulsions, 216
 Electrolysis, 715
 Electropositive charge mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
 Electrostatic charge generation in hair, 60–61
 Ellagic acid, 397
 Emollients, 379–382, 379
 in foundation makeups, 526, 535
 in masks, 477
 in shaving preparations, 503, 505
 Empirical approach to compounding of new product developments, 123–124
 Emulsification, emulsions, 117, 118, 211–233, 280 (*See also* Manufacture of cosmetics)
 acne products using, 463
 addition of emulsifier, 214
 agitation in, 214–215, 222–223
 alcohol in, 216, 220, 229
 alkyl sulfates in, 227
 alkylacrylate cross-polymers in, 222
 aluminum silicates in, 225
 amphiphile content in, 214
 amphoteric surfactants in, 217 (*t*), 232
 anionic surfactants in, 216, 217 (*t*)
 antioxidants in, 231
 auxiliaries in, 212, 216, 220, 221, 222, 225–226
 barrier function of skin vs., 232
 bath oils as, 222
 bentonite in, 225
 botanicals as sources of, 311
 Brownian movement of droplets in, 225–227
 calorimetric HLB values in, 221
 cationic surfactants in, 216, 217 (*t*), 218
 cetearyl alcohol in, 227, 228, 229
 cetyl hydroxyethyl cellulose in, 222
 cetyldimethicone copolyol at water/oil interface, 229
 chemical nature of, 216–218
 clays in, 225
 clear emulsions, 212, 230, 232
 coalescence of droplets in, 218
 colloid mills in, 223
 computational HLB values in, 221
 contamination of, 280
 continuous high pressure homogenizers, 822–824, 822, 823
 continuous oil phase, 280
 cooling of emulsion products, 223, 866–868
 cosmetic emulsifiers, list of, 219 (*t*)
 creamlike emulsions, 227
 creaming in, 218, 225
 deagglomeration in, 828
 delivery of active agents through skin using, 232
 discontinuous phase of oil in, 212, 218
 dispersability in water of, 219 (*t*)
 disperse phase of oil in, 212, 218

- Emulsification, emulsions (*cont.*)
dispersion creation in,
213–214
dispersion equipment,
819–822, **820**
DLVO electrical double layer
concept in, 218
droplet or globule formation
in, 212, 218
electrical charge in, 217–218
electrical double layer
formation in, 216
ethoxylated ethers in, 232
ethoxylated emulsifiers in,
218, 219–220
external or continuous phase
in, 212, 218
fatty acids in, 228, 280
floculated emulsions, 218,
828
foaming during preparation
of, 216
formation of emulsions,
213–222
foundation makeup, 531–532
gel type thickeners for, 222
Gibbs adsorption equation in,
216
glycerin in, 227, 280
glyceryl oleate in, 229
glyceryl stearate in, 228
hair conditioners, 868
heat-sensitive components in,
223
high-shear mixers, 819–822,
820
HLB, use of, 218–221 (*t*),
225
homogenization of, 215, 216,
223, 802–805, **802, 804**
hydrophile/lipophile balance
(HLB) in, 218–220,
221 (*t*), 224
hydrophilic polymers in, 222
in shaving preparations, 506
interfacial film development
in, 216–217
interfacial tension and, 216
interlamellarly fixed water in,
228
internal phase of oil in, 212,
218, 228, 231
ionic surfactants in, 216,
217 (*t*)
ionized emulsifiers, 218
Kahlweit fish phase diagram
for, 213, **214**, 224, 230
lamellar gel phase in, 216,
228
lamellar liquid crystalline
phase in, 216
lanolin in, 229
lipids in, 211, 212, 220, 222,
225, 280
lipids in, HLB required of,
221 (*t*)
liposome production,
825–826
liquid crystalline phase in, 217
liquid-in-liquid dispersion
system for, 230
lyotropic hexagonal phase in,
216
macroemulsions, 212,
222–224, 230, 232
masks, 475 (*t*), 477
micelles in, 213, 224, 230
microemulsions, 212–213,
222, 224, 232, 229–231,
383
mineral oil in, 227
mouthwashes, 747
multiphase oil-in-water (O/W)
emulsions, 223, 226–228,
227
multiple emulsions and, 213,
382, 384, 385, 382
nonionic emulsions, 220
nonionic surfactants in,
217 (*t*), 217–218, 227
oil in, 214, 223
oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions,
212, 214, 216, 219, 220,
222–226, 280, 361, 370,
371, 376, 380, 428–429,
453, 505, 531–535, 565
oil-in-water-in-oil (O/W/O)
emulsions, 213, 382, 384
oil-water ratio and
effectiveness of
preservatives, 290–291
opaque emulsifiers and, 211,
212
organic polymers in, 225
orientation phase, 814–815
Ostwald ripening of particles
in, 230
oxidative degradation of, 231
particle sizes in, 213, 213 (*t*),
214
PEG-20 glyceryl stearate in,
227, 228
petrolatum in, 227
pH levels of, 280
phase inversion temperature
(PIT) in, 224–225, 228,
231
phenol index HLB values in,
221
physical nature of, 216–218
polarized light microscopic
examination of, 217
polyglyceryl-3 distearate in,
229
polymers in, 222, 225, 226
polyoxyethylene derivatives
in, 232
polyoxyethylene esters in, 220
polyoxyethylene ethers in, 220
polysorbates in, 232
preservatives and, 290–291
preservatives in, 231
processing equipment for,
816–819, **816–820**
relationship of PIT to HLB
values in, 221
rheological additive, 240
rheometry to detect presence
of, 217
rising or creaming in, 218,
225
safety of, 223, 231–232
shampoo, 602
shaving preparations, 510
silicones as antifoamers,
216
skin care products, 358, 359
soap as, 218, 227
sodium lauryl sulfate, 228
solids in, 225
solubility parameter HLB
values in, 221
solubility vs. partition
coefficient in, 220
solvents in, 211, 218–219
stability of, 211, 212, 215,
217, 218, 220, 222, 223,
224, 229–231, 891–896

- stabilizers for, 215, 225–226, 226 (*t*)
 stearyl alcohol in, 220
 Stokes' law and mobility of droplets in, 225
 submicron emulsions, 212
 sunscreens, 428–430
 surfactants in, 192, 213, 216, 217 (*t*), 218, 223, 232, 814–815
 suspension of solids, 829–830
 temperature effect on, 213, 223, 224, 230–231, 815–816
 thermodynamic instability in (*See* Stability of)
 thickeners for, 222, 225–226, 229
 transparent emulsions, 212, 230
 triglycerides in, 280
 ultrafine emulsions, 230
 ultrasonifiers in, 223
 van der Waals interactions in, 217
 vegetable oils in, 211
 viscosity of, 222, 225, 228, 229, 231
 water in, 211, 212, 214, 220, 223, 227, 228
 water-in-oil (W/O) emulsions, 212, 216, 220, 222, 228–229, **229**, 280, 361, 370, 371, 374, 376, 380, 428–429, 531, 535–538, 565
 water-in-oil-in-water (W/O/W) emulsions, 213, 382, 384, 382
 water-in-silicone emulsion, 453, 535–536, 824–825
 zwitterionic betaine, 311
 Emulsification formation in shampoos, 613–614
 Emulsion processing equipment, 782–783
 Enamel of tooth, 89, **89**, 90–91, 95, 97
 Endocuticle of hair, **44**, 45, 50
 Endothelial adhesion molecules, 29
 Endothelium in ocular tissues, 83
 Energy constant (Planck's constant), 24
 Enforcement of U.S. cosmetic regulations, 130
 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and, 147
 Ensulizole sunscreens, 417, 422
 Environment as source of contaminations, 277–278
 Environmental factors in acne, 460
 Environmental factors in moisture content of skin, 268–269, 363–364, **364**, **365**
 Enzymatic homeostatis theory in skin care, 386
 Enzymes
 as antioxidants, 256
 in depilatories, 720
 in saliva, 91
 in skin, 15, 386
 in toothpastes, 737
 Eosin, in lipsticks, 545, 547, 548
 EP spray system, 346
 Epicatechin and related materials, 255
 Epicatechin gallate, 255
 Epicuticle of hair, **44**, 46
 Epidermal rete ridges in skin, 4
 Epidermis, 3, 4–7, 4, 351, 352, 387
 hair follicle in, 39, **41**
 lipids in, 7 (*t*)
 nails and, **72**, 73
 Epigallocatechin, 255
 Epigallocatechin gallate, 255
 Epithelium of nailbed in nails, 73
 Epithelium of ocular tissues and eyes, 81, 82
 Ergocalciferol, 368
 Erythema, 23, 25, 25, 26, 28–29
 Erythromycin in acne products, 467
 Essential fatty acids (EFA), 368
 Esteramides
 in shampoos, 606
 in surfactants, 204
 Esterification in skin, 353
 Esters
 as contamination source, 277
 in lipsticks, 548–549
 microbial growth in, 281
 in nail polishes, 578
 in shaving preparations, 505
 in surfactants, 204–206
 Estrogen and hair, 42
 Estrogenic hormones, regulation of, 135
 ET-1 receptors and tanning, 398
 Ethanol, in shampoos, 623
 Ethanalamine, in hair straighteners, 713
 Ether sulfates, 689
 Ethers in surfactants, 206–207
 Ethoxydiglycol, in semipermanent hair colors, 682
 Ethoxylated ethers, 232
 Ethoxylated emulsifiers, 218
 Ethoxylated fatty alcohol, in shaving preparations, 510
 Ethoxylated hydrogenated castor oil, in shampoos, 622
 Ethoxylated lanolin, in nail strengtheners, 595
 Ethoxylated lipids, in hair setting/styling products, 639
 Ethoxylated materials in surfactants, 202, 206–207
 Ethyl acetate in nail polishes, 579
 Ethyl alcohol
 in acne products, 466, 468
 in nail polishes, 579
 in over-the-counter remedies, 404
 as preservative, 294
 Ethyl ester, in hair setting/styling products, 659
 Ethyl lactate, in nail polishes, 579
 Ethylene glycol distearate, emulsifier, 219
 Ethylene glycol, in shampoos, 623
 Ethylene oxide
 in shampoos, 607, 608
 in surfactants, 201
 Ethylhexyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
 Ethylmaleimide, in hair setting/styling products, 655, 662

- Ethylparaben, as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Eucalyptol, 314
in over-the-counter remedies, 404
toothpaste, 737
- Eumelanin, 11
- European Cosmetic Toiletry and Perfumery Association, 130
- European Patent Convention (EPC), 177, 179–180
- European Pharmacopoeia (EP), 297, 298
- European Union (E.U.) cosmetic regulation, 147–162
animal testing status in labeling, 159, 161–162
Annexes of Cosmetic Directives, 149, 153–155
Articles of Cosmetics Directives, 149
banned substances, 150, 151
batch numbers in labeling, 157–158
COLIPA, 150, 155, 160, 161
color additives, 151–152
contents in labeling, 157
cosmeceuticals, 149
Cosmetics Directive in, 147–148, 149
country of origin in labeling, 159
definition of cosmetics vs. drugs, 148–149
efficacy, 150, 161
excluded substances, 151, 152
expiry date in labeling, 157
formulation in labeling, 160
foundation makeup, 523
function of products in labeling, 158
Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP), 160
ingredient listing, 158
ingredients, 150
instructions in labeling, 157
International Color Handbook, CTFA, 152
International Nomenclature of Cosmetic Ingredients, 158, 159
labeling, 156–159
language of labeling, 159
lipstick colorants, 544
manufacturers' name and address in labeling, 157
method of manufacture in labeling, 160
new substances, 154–155
Packaging Waste Directive in, 162
poison center notification in labeling, 161
preservatives, 151, 152, 295, 296, 299, 303
product efficacy, 150, 161
product information package (PIP), 159–161
quality, 150
raw materials in labeling, 160
registration of manufacturers, 161
restricted substances, 151
safety assessment of finished products, 155–156
safety in, 150, 155–156, 161, 765–766
sale of cosmetics in E.U., 147–148
sale of medicinal products in E.U., 148–149
Scientific Committee for Cosmetic and Non Food products (SCCNFP), 151, 153–155, 156
sun protection factor (SPF), 153
sunscreens, 155
toxic substances, 154
U.S. regulation and, 129
ultraviolet (UV) filters, 151, 153
warnings in labeling, 157
- European-American Phytomedicines Coalition (EAPC), 145
- Evaporation rates of solvents in nail polishes, 579, 579 (*t*)
- Evaporimetry testing, 775
- Evening primrose seed oil, 309, 329
- Excluded substances, in E.U. cosmetic regulation, 151, 152
- Exocuticle of hair, 45, 44, 61
- Expiration dating in labeling, 140, 157
- External or continuous phase of oil in emulsions, 212, 218
- Extracts of botanicals, 306–308
- Extrudable gel type antiperspirants and deodorants, 454–455
- Extrusion blow molding, 880
- Eye creams, 378
- Eye infection, 284
- Eye irritancy testing in, 768–769, 771
- Eye makeup, 563
- Eye shadow, 131, 569–571
creaseproof stick, 571
powder, 853
- Eyebrow makeup, 566–569
- Eyebrow pencils, 567–568
- Eyelids, 79–81
- Eyeliner, 131, 166, 566–569
- Eyes (*See* Ocular tissues and eyes)
- F-Z finger pump foamer system, 347
- Face cream, 131
- Face lotion, 131
- Face masks, 131, 1
- Facial hair, 41, 42, 43
- Fair Packaging and Labeling Act (FPLA), 132
- Fas/FasL system, UV-mediated immunosuppression and, 32
- Fat content of nails, 73
- Fats, as contamination source, 277
- Fatty acids, 311, 460, 461, 604, 689
comedogenicity of, 463
in emulsions, 228, 280
in foundation makeups, 533, 538
in hair setting/styling products, 641
in hair, 46
as lipids, 324, 329–330
in lipsticks, 548
in mascaras, 565, 566
microbial growth in, 281
as rheological additive, 235
in shampoos, 606, 622

- in shaving preparations, 502–503, 505, 506, 510
in skin care products, 324, 329–330, 368–369
in skin, 16, 353
in soaps, 401, 486
in surfactants, 197, 198, 203
- Fatty alcohol sulfates, 689
- Fatty alcohols
in foundation makeups, 533
in lipsticks, 548
- Fatty alkanolamides, in
shampoos, 606–607, 622
- Fatty alkyl shampoo, 608
- Fatty amido alkyl shampoo, 608
- Fatty glyceryl ether sulfonates in
shampoos, 606
- FD&C Blue 1, 135
- FD&C Green 5, 135
- FD&C Red 40, 135
- FD&C Yellow 5, 135
- FDA Modernization Act of
1997, 133
- Federal Trade Commission
(FTC), 146
- Federal Trade Commission Act
(FTCA), 146
- Feminine hygiene products, 120, 131
- Fennel oil, 314
- Fenton reaction, 250, 251
- Ferric ferrocyanide (ultramarine
blue), 546
- Ferulic acid, 256, 312
- Fever blister treatments,
401–403
- Fibroblast growth factor, 15
- Fibroblasts in skin, 17, 387, 388
- Fibronectin in skin, 34
- Filaggrin, 8
- Filling processes, 836–846
aerosols, 343
creams, 841–843
dispersions, 841–843
Godet products, 843–844
high-viscosity products,
839–840
hot products, 841–843
lipsticks and lip balms,
844–845
loose powders, 861
low-viscosity products,
837–838
packaging lines for, 841, **842**
pressed powder, 861–863
shear-sensitive products,
840–841
suppositories, 844–845
warm products, 841–843
- Filling temperature, 841
- Film-formers in nail polishes,
575–576
- Filtration, 788
- Finger- vs. toenail growth rates,
72, 74
- Five-minute men's colorants,
688
- Fixative residue removal by
shampoo, 619
- Flakeproof mascara, 565
- “Flaming” of lipsticks, 558
- Flavins/flavonoids
as antioxidants, 250, 253, 257,
312
botanicals as sources of, 317
- Flavorings
botanicals as sources of,
313–315, 313
mouthwashes, 745–747, 746
toothpaste, 726
- Flesh-eating bacteria and
preservatives, 285
- Flexibility in new product
developments, 113–114
- Flexible packaging, 882–883
- Flexography printing for
packaging, 884
- Flocculated emulsions, 218,
828
- Flossing in oral care, 96
- Flow patterns and agitation, 802,
803, 810–811
- Flow properties (*See*
Rheological additives)
- Fluid flow, 788
- Fluoride, 94, 96–100, 142, 151,
729, 735–736, 745, 749
- Flyaway effect (static) in hair,
60–61
- Foam formation in surfactants,
194–195
- Foaming (lather) characteristics
mouthwashes, 745
shampoo, 601, 603, 609,
613–614, 630–631
shave products, 502–504
- Foaming products, 194–195,
120
- Follicle, **4,13–14**, 18, **39–41**,
352, 438
- Food and Drug Administration
(FDA), 130–133, 133–138,
398–401
- Food Drug and Cosmetic Act
(FDCA), 130, 133
- Foot powder, 120, 131
- Formaldehyde
in foundation makeups, 535,
536
in nail strengtheners, 594–595
in permanent waves, 699
as preservative, 289, 290, 301
in shampoos, 624
- Formalin, 286, 287
- Formulation in labeling, 160
- Foundation makeup, 131, 360,
524–543
alkaline earths in, 524
amines in, 534
anhydrous formulations of,
526, 530, 541–543
application methods for,
526–527
binders in, 538, 539
bismuth oxychloride in, 524
blending of, 539
boron nitride in, 524
chemical reaction of pigments
in, 530
colored pigments in, 529–531
comedogenicity of ingredients
in, 535
coverage by, 524–526
cream-powder (anhydrous)
foundations, 541–543
emollients in, 526, 535
emulsified liquid or cream,
531–532
fillers in, 527
finish obtained from, 524, 526
form of, 524
formulations for, 531–543
fragrance in, 528, 531
humectants for, 535
iron oxide pigments in, 529
kaolin in, 524, 526

- Foundation makeup (*cont.*)
 light feeling, natural coverage formula, 534
 liquid-powder (anhydrous) foundations, 541–543
 loose powder foundations, 541
 mechanical blended pigments in, 530
 mechanical/heat blended pigments in, 530
 medium-coverage formula, 533
 mica in, 525, 528
 oil-based, 526, 530, 532–535
 oil-in-water emulsion, 531, 532–535
 oils in, 535
 pearlceous materials in, 524, 526
 pigments in, 527, 530
 powder foundations, 538–541
 precipitation of pigments in, 530
 preservatives in, 535, 536
 pressed powder foundations, 538–541, 861–863
 reflectivity of materials in, 524–525
 sericite in, 528
 soaps in, 524
 specialty fillers in, 528–529
 stabilizers for, 535, 536
 stick foundations, 543
 surface treated pigments in, 529–530
 talc in, 524–525, 527–528, 531
 titanium dioxide in, 525, 529, 531, 532
 titanium oxide in, 524
 ultramarine blue pigments in, 529
 viscosity of, 538
 water-based, 526, 530, 535–538
 water-in-oil emulsion, 531, 535–538
 water-in-silicone emulsion, 535–536
 waxes in, 530, 538, 542, 543
 wear characteristics of, 527
 wetting agents in, 535
 zinc oxide in, 524, 525–526
- Fragrance, 131, 166, 378, 385
 in after-shave products, 515
 botanicals as sources of, 313–315
 in dandruff products, 410
 in foundation makeups, 528, 531
 in hair setting/styling products, 641
 in permanent waves, 705, 707
 in nail polishes, 582
 in shampoos, 624
 in shaving preparations, 507
 in skin care products, 362, 371–383
 water-soluble botanical fragrances, 315
- Freckles, 33, 34
- Free fatty acid (FFA)
 in shampoos, 615
 in shaving preparations, 503
 in skin, 6, 13
- Free radical formation, 35, 248–249
- Friction of hair, 50, 59–60
- Frostbite, 20
- Fructose, in skin cleansers, 497
- Fuller's earth, in masks, 473
- Function of products in labeling, 158
- Functionality of products, 114
- Fungal growth, 274–276, 284
- Fungal infections of nails, 75, 76–77
- Fusobacterium nucleatum* as cause of gingivitis in oral care, 100
- GAG (*See* Glycosaminoglycans)
- Galactoarabinan, 311
- Gallic acid as antioxidant, 256, 312
- Gardenia, 316, 317
- Gelatin
 in emulsions, 226
 in masks, 481
- Gelatin capsules, 120
- Gelatin use and nails, 75
- Gellan gum toothpaste, 733
- Gelling agents in toothpastes, 726
- Gels, 119
 after-shave gels, 517
 “blooming” gels, 509–510
 hair gels, 868
 hair setting/styling products, 646–650
 pomade, 665
 post-foaming shave gels, 509–510
 preelectric shave gel stick, 514
 ringing gels, 430, 651
 sunscreens, 430
 thickeners for emulsions, 222
- Genetic disorders of hair, 43
- Genistein as antioxidant, 255
- Geranium oil, 314
- German chamomile, 320
- Gibbs adsorption equation, 187–189, 191, 193, 216
- Ginger oil, 314
- Gingival crevicular fluid, 92
- Gingival margin of tooth, 89
- Gingivitis, 99–101, 736
- Glass packaging, 883–884
- Glazes, hair, 643–646
- Globalization of industry and U.S. cosmetic regulations, 129
- Glucamine, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glucosamine, 397
 as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Glucosamine hydrochloride, in hair setting/styling products, 642
- Glucose, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glucoside surfactants, 207
- Glucuronic acid, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glutamate, as preservative, 291
- Glutamic acid
 in hair, 48
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glutaraldehyde, 286, 287
- Glutathione, 256, 397
- Glycereth 7, 654
- Glycereth 26, 650
- Glycerides, 460, 461
 as lipid, 324
 in surfactants, 204–205

- Glycerin, 310, 378, 385
 in after-shave products, 516, 518
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
 in cuticle removers, 589, 591
 in dental products, 739
 in emulsions, 227, 280
 in hair setting/styling products, 640, 643, 645, 646, 649, 664
 in hair straighteners, 711
 as humectant, 269, 270, 364, 366
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
 in lipsticks, 548
 in masks, 477, 480, 481
 microbial growth in, 280
 in mouthwashes, 747, 750
 in nail strengtheners, 594
 in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
 in shampoos, 623
 in shaving preparations, 503, 504, 506
 in skin cleansers, 497, 498, 499
 in skin care, 372, 374, 379, 381, 383, 384
 in soaps, 487
 in toothpastes, 731, 737
 Glyceryl 2-ethylhexanoate, 385
 Glyceryl esters foundation makeup, 533
 Glyceryl ether (GE), 328
 Glyceryl isostearate, 384, 385
 Glyceryl oleate in emulsions, 229
 Glyceryl stearate
 as emulsifier, 219
 in hair setting/styling products, 649
 Glyceryl oleate, 376
 Glyceryl polymethacrylate, in hair setting/styling products, 645, 646
 Glyceryl stearate, 378
 in acne products, 466
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
 as emulsifier, 219, 228
 in foundation makeups, 533
 in hair setting/styling products, 654
 in shampoos, 623
 in shaving preparations, 510
 in skin care, 371, 372, 373, 380, 382, 384, 498
 in surfactants, 204
 Glyceryl thioglycolate
 permanent waves, 701, 705, 706
 Glyceryl triisostearate, 385
 Glyceryl triacetyl hydroxy stearate lipstick, 548
 Glyceryl tribehenate foundation makeup, 541
 Glyceryl-3 diisostearate, comedogenicity of, 463
 Glycine
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
 in hair, 47
 Glycocalyx in ocular tissues and eye, 81
 Glycol, 235, 504, 548
 Glycol copolymer, in nail polishes, 577
 Glycol distearate
 in moisturizers, 265
 in shaving preparations, 504
 Glycol stearate, 628
 in hair straighteners, 711
 in skin cleansers, 497
 Glycolcalyx of skin, 5
 Glycolic acid, in skin care, 379, 468
 Glycolipids in skin, 353
 Glycols as rheological additives, 235
 Glycoproteins, 5, 46
 Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs)
 as humectants, 364, 366
 as hydrophilic polymers, 268
 in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
 in skin, 3, 17, 18, 22
 Glyphic wrinkles, 378
 Glysine, in skin, 18
 Goblet cells in ocular tissues, 81, 83
 Godet product fills, 843–844
 Good manufacturing practice (GMP)
 compliance with U.S. regulation and, 137
 E.U. regulation of, 160
 preservatives and, 274, 302
 Gore-Tex, 357
 Gossypol as antioxidant, 252
 Gram-negative bacteria, 283
 Gram-positive bacteria, 283
 Granular layer of epidermis in skin, 4, 16
 Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, 15
 Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), 15
 Grape seed oil, 309
 Grapefruit oil, 314
 “Grocery list” research method
 in new product development, 112–113
 Ground substance, 3, 18
 Growth rate of hair, 39–40, 42
 Growth rate of nails, 73, 74
 Guanine nail polish, 581
 Guar gum, 311
 in after-shave products, 518
 in emulsions, 226
 in hair setting/styling products, 644
 in masks, 477, 481
 rheological properties of, 244
 in shaving preparations, 503, 505
 in toothpastes, 733
 Guar hydroxypropyltrimonium chloride, 628
 Guerbet alcohol reaction in surfactants, 203
 Guinea pig maximization testing, 769
 Gum arabic, 226, 311
 Gums, 311
 as contamination source, 277
 in masks, 477, 481
 as rheological additive, 226, 235, 243, 244
 in shaving preparations, 505, 506, 518
 in toothpastes, 732, 733
 H-NMR for obtaining HLB values, 221
 Haber/Weiss reaction, 251

- Hair, 39–70
- adhesion of, 50
 - alkaline agents and, 63–64
 - alopecia, 43, 44
 - alopecia androgenetica, 44
 - alopecia areata, 44
 - amino acids in, 46–48, 67, 68
 - anagen phase of growth in, 41–42, **42**
 - anagen effluvium, 44
 - antidandruff shampoos and lotions, 408–412, 630
 - arrector pili muscle of, **40**
 - axillary region hair, 41
 - basement membrane of, **40**
 - bending properties of, 50, 56
 - body in, 632
 - bulb, follicular bulb of, 39, **40**
 - Bunte Salt in, 64–65
 - C-S scission in, 67, 68
 - catagen phase of growth in, 41–42, **42**
 - cell membrane complex (CMC) of, 44, **44**, 45, 46, 61
 - cell proliferation and differentiation zone in, **40**
 - chemical properties of, 61–69
 - chemically treated hair and shampoos, 621–622
 - citrulline in, 48
 - clay masks for, 471–472
 - clipping of, 42
 - color of, 14
 - combing damage to hair, **621**
 - cortex of, 39, **40**, 41, **44**, 45–48, 50–51, 68
 - covalent cross-links in, 47, 47 (*t*), 61–62
 - curl patterns in, 636
 - curling in, 48
 - curvature of, 50
 - cuticle of, 39, **40**, **44**, 45–46, **45**, 50–51, 55, 60, 61, 620
 - cyclic growth activity of, 41–42, **42**
 - cysteic acid in, 68
 - cysteine in, 45–48, 61, 63–64, 66, 68
 - deformation of, 51, 53
 - degradation of inner root sheath (IRS) zone in, **40**
 - dehydration zone in, **40**, 41
 - dermal papilla of, **40**
 - dermal sheath of, **40**
 - development of, 39–44
 - directional frictional effect (DFE) in, 45, 59–60
 - disorders of, 43–44
 - disulfide bond in, **40**, 41, 62–67
 - dithiane in, 66
 - dye uptake by, 48
 - effect of alkalis on, 63, 64
 - effect of sulfites on, 64, 65
 - effect of mercaptan on, 65, 66
 - effect of oxidants on, 66, 68
 - elasticity of (Young's modulus), 53
 - electrostatics of, 60–61
 - endocuticle of, 45, **44**, 50
 - epicuticle of, **44**, 46
 - epidermal layer around follicle of, 39, **41**
 - exocuticle of, 45, **44**, 61
 - facial hair, 41, 42, 43
 - flyaway effect (static) in, 60–61
 - follicle, **4**, 13–14, 18, 39, **40**, 41, 352, 438
 - frictional properties of, 50, 59–60
 - genetic disorders of, 43
 - glucose and, 40
 - glutamic acid in, 48
 - glycine in, 47
 - glycoproteins in, 46
 - growth effect hormones, 42
 - growth effect nutrition, 43
 - growth rate of, 39–40, 42
 - hair follicle, **4**, 39, **40**
 - hair waving chemistry, 48, 61–69, 701–705 (*See also* Permanent waving)
 - hardening zone in, **40**, 41
 - heavy metal content of, 49
 - helix in, **44**
 - High-S proteins in, **44**
 - histidine in, 67, 68
 - Hookean deformation in, 51
 - hormonal influence on, 42–43, 48–49
 - hydrogen bonds in, 62
 - hydrophobicity of, 46, 57–58, **58**
 - infant and postnatal, 41
 - inner root sheath (IRS) of, 39, **40**
 - intermediate filament (IF) in, 41, **44**, 47, 50, 51, **52**, 61, 62
 - keratin associated proteins (KAPs) in, 41, 48, 61
 - keratin gene expression region in, **40**, 40
 - keratin in, 41, 46–47, 50–54, 61–65, 695, 696
 - kwashiorkor, 40, 43, 49
 - lanthionine in, 63–64
 - lanugo or prenatal hair, 41
 - left-handed helix in, **44**
 - lipids in, 46–48, 61
 - loss of, 43–44
 - low-S proteins in, **44**
 - luster of, 50, 58–59, 631, 632
 - lysine in, 45, 67
 - lysinoalanine in, 64
 - macrofibril in, **44**
 - male-pattern alopecia, 44
 - manageability of, 632
 - marasmus, 40, 43
 - matrix of, **44**, 50, 51, 52, 55
 - mechanical properties of, 48–57
 - medulla of, 39, **40**, **44**, 48
 - melanin in, 67, 68, 69
 - melanosomes in, 14
 - mercaptan in, 66
 - metals in, 48–49
 - methionine in, 67, 68
 - moisturizers for, 269–270
 - monilethrix, 43
 - morphology, 44–49, **44**
 - negative charge of, 609–610
 - nonkeratinous proteins in, 61
 - nuclear remnant of, **44**
 - number of hair follicles and, 41
 - nutritional needs of, 40, 43, 49
 - ortho cell in, **44**
 - ortho-paracortical cells in, **44**, 48
 - outer root sheath (ORS) of, 39, **40**
 - oxidation in, 66–68
 - oxidation zone in, 41
 - oxidizing (bleaching) agents for, 67
 - paracortical cell in, **44**, 48

- pH and sorption/desorption characteristics of, 55–56, 66, 609
- phenylalanine in, 68
- physical properties of, 49–57
- pili torti, 43
- pK values and thiol production in, 66
- polarization in, 62
- postpartum alopecia, 43, 44
- prenatal lanugo, 41
- proline in, 68
- protein helices in, **44**, 51, 52
- proteins in, 40, 41–48, **44**, 55, 61, 62, 68, 69
- protofilaments in, 47–48
- pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- puberty and, 41, 42–43
- pubic hair, 41, 43
- removal of (depilation), 131, 164, 695, 711–721
- removal of (epilation), 713
- resorption zone in, **40**
- right-handed helix in, **44**
- S-S scission in, 67, 68
- sebaceous gland and, 13, **40**, 48
- sebum on, 614–616
- SH-group in stress relaxation, 55–56
- shape of, 695, 696
- shaving of, 42
- shine of, 58–59
- softening of, for shaving, 501–502
- split ends in, **621**
- static charge in, 50, 60–61
- steam, effect on, 62
- stress relaxation in, 55–56
- stress-strain response in, 50–52, **50**
- stretching in, 51, 53
- structure of, 39–44, **41**
- sulfhydryls reaction with, 41, 46, 51, 53, 63, 66
- sulfites reaction with, 64–65
- sun bleaching of, 68–69
- surface properties of, 57–61
- telogen phase of growth in, 41–42, **42**
- telogen effluvium, 44
- tensile properties of, 50–53
- thioesters in, 46, 61, 63–64
- thiols reaction with, 65–66
- thiosulfate in, 64–65
- torsional properties of, 50, 56–57
- trace metal content of, 49
- trichorrhexis nodosa, 43
- tryptophan in, 67, 68
- turnover point in, 51–53
- tyrosine in, 47, 67, 68
- ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 68–69
- vellus, 41
- water, effect on, 62
- water sorption/desorption, 54–55, **54**
- water swelling of, 54
- wettability of, 50, 54, 57–58, **58**, 68
- yield point of, 51, 53
- Young-Dupre equation and wettability of, 58
- Hair care products (hair setting products), 166**
- conditioners, 868
- gels, 868
- rheological additives for, 244
- Hair colorants/dyes, 131, 164, 669–694**
- affinity for keratin in, 671–672
- alkalizing agents, 687
- aminoanthraquinones in, 676, 679–680
- auto-oxidative dyes, 690–691
- Bandrowski's base for, 685
- bleaching of hair, 692–694
- characteristics of, 670–672
- colorants used in, 674, 674 (*t*)
- commercial formulation for semipermanent color, 680–682
- commercial product mixtures, 672
- compatibility with other hair treatments and, 671
- concentrations of dyestuffs in, 672–673
- conditioners in, 689
- couplers in, 684, **684**
- duration of coloring process, 673, 676, 683
- dyestuffs used in, 676
- five-minute men's colorants, 688
- formation of colors in hair, 685–686, **686**
- frequency of applications of, 673
- hair color removers, 692
- harmlessness of, 670–671
- hydrogen peroxide in, 687
- indolic dyes, 691–692, **691**
- lightening of hair, 692–694
- men's hair colorants, 688
- metallic hair dyes, 691
- nitroaminophenols in, 676, 678–679, **678**
- nitrophenylenediamines in, 676–678, **677**
- nonammonia alkalizers in, 688
- oxidative hair coloring, 682–690, **686**
- permanent hair coloring, 670, 682–690
- preservatives in, 688–689
- primary intermediate dyestuffs in, 683, **684**
- quantity of solution applied, 673
- regulation of, 136
- safety of, 670–671
- selectivity in, 671
- semipermanent hair coloring, 670, 676–682, 688
- stability of, 671
- surfactants in, 689
- systems of, 669–670
- temporary hair coloring, 670, 674–675
- toxicology of, 686–687
- treatment after coloration and, 673
- vegetable hair dyes, 691
- Hair conditioner, 131**
- Hair follicle, 4, 13–14, 18, 39–41, 80, 438**
- Hair gels, 868
- Hair growers, 164
- Hair moisturizers, 269–270
- Hair relaxers, 118, 650
- Hair rinses, 131, 165
- Hair setting products, 635–667**
- additives to, 641
- antistatic agents in, 639
- antifrizz gel, 646

- Hair setting products (*cont.*)
blow-dry lotion, 643
botanical extracts in, 641
brilliantine, 664
colorants in, 641, 663, 665
cosolvents in, 638
cream gel for hair relaxer, 650
curl patterns in hair, 636
detackifiers in, 639
dry-setting products, 656–663
effects of, 637
extra body mousse, 654
fibrous/stringy lotion, 644
fragrance in, 641
gel pomade, 665
gels, 646–650
glazes, 643–646
hair sprays, 636, 656–663
hair tonic, 665
high humidity curl retention values, 666
high-viscosity gel, 648
humectants in, 639
liquids, 642–643
lotions, 642–643, 645
low-viscosity lotion, 645
marketing additives to, 641
mascara for hair, 665, 663
mechanisms of hair styling, 635–637
modifiers in, 639–640
mousses, 652–653, 654
nondrip lotion glaze, 645
nonaerosol mousse, 655
performance evaluation of, 666–667, **666**
plasticizers in, 639
polymers in, 637, 638–639
pomades, 636, 651–652, 664
postfoaming gel/mousse, 653–655, 656
pourable sculpting gel, 646
preservatives in, 640–641
propellants for, 638, 653
protection of hair, 636–637
proteins in, 641
pump spray, 659
PVP in, 638, 647
resins for, 638–639
ringing gels, 651
sculpting lotions, 643–646
setting lotion, 643
shaping spray, 653
shine enhancers, 636
solubilizers in, 641
solvents in, 637–638, 655, 660, 665
splash-on, 642–643
split end control, 645, 664
spray gels, 642–643, 653, 647
spritz styling sprays, 653
styling creams, 649–651
styling gel with UV screen, 649
styling sticks, 652
tack-free sprayable lotion, 644
thermal protection lotion, 645
tonics, 636, 665
UV absorbers in, 641–649
viscosity, 646–650
vitamins in, 641
volatile organic compounds in, 655
wet-set products, 642–643
wetting agents in, 639
- Hair spray, 120, 131, 636, 656–663
aerosol type, 658–663
dispensing methods for, 656–657
emulsion formation in, 613–614
mesophase formation in, 613–614
neutralizers in, 658
penetration of, 613–614
polymers in, 657, 658
propellants for, 658–663
pump spray hair spray, 659
PVP in, 657, 658
stability, 662
volatile organic compounds in, 657
- Hair straighteners, 131, 695, 708–711
caustic preparations for, 709–710
chemical agents, 710–711
hot comb method, 709
lipids in, 711–712
neutralizers, 711
no-lye hair straightener, 712
regulation of, 134–135
relaxers, 710–711
self-heating hair straightener, 713
- Hair tonic, 665
- Halogenated salicylates, 134
- Halogens, in hair, 67
- Hamamelis virginiana* (*See* Witch hazel)
- Hammer mill, **854**, 858–859
- Hand and body protectants, 360
- Hand creams, 382
- Hand lotion, 131
- Hand sanitizers, 144
- Haptens of tooth, 85
- Haptens, UV-mediated
immunosuppression and, 32
- Hardeners for nails, 75, 587
- Hardening zone in hair, **40**, 41
- Hazardous substances and U.S. cosmetic regulation, 134
- Head space in aerosols, 344
- Healing process and moisture in skin, 265–266
- Heat exchanger, **801**
- Heat-sensitive components in emulsions, 223
- Heat transfer, 788, 792, 796–799, **797**, 800–801, 849–851
- Heat waving processes, 699–701
- Heavy metal content of, 49
- Hectorite, 385
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 454
in masks, 473
in nail polishes, 583
rheological properties of, 244, 245
in skin care, 371, 381
- HEDTA, 705, 706
- Helix in hair, **44**
- Hemidesmosomes, in ocular tissues and eyes, 81
- Hemoglobin, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23, 24
- Henna, 318, 669
- Heparin, in skin, 15
- Herbal extracts in shampoos (botanicals), 601–602
- Herbs, as contamination source, 277
- Hesperidine as antioxidant, 255
- Hexachlorophene, 134
in acne products, 467
in skin cleansers, 495

- Hexadecanoic acid, 198
- Hexadecene copolymer, in hair setting/styling products, 652
- Hexadecyl adipate, in skin care, 376
- Hexamethylene tetramine, in permanent waves, 699
- Hexamidine isethionate, 286, 287
- Hexyl laurate, in foundation makeups, 537
- Hexylene glycol in shampoos, 623
- Hexylresorcinol, in O.T.C drugs, 404
- High flow/low shear homogenizers, 820
- High humidity curl retention values in hair setting/styling products, 666
- High-shear mixers, 819–822, **820**, 848–849
- High-shear/low flow homogenizers, 821
- High-S proteins in hair, **44**
- High-viscosity mixture, 810–813, **812**, **813**
- Hinokitiol, 312, 397
- Histamines, 15, 29
- Histidine
in hair, 67, 68
as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Histology of nails, 73
- Hives, contact urticaria, 759–770
- Homeopathic Pharmacopoeia, defining drugs and, 131
- Homogenization of emulsions, 215, 223, 241, 802–805, **802**, **804**, 819
- Homosalate in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421
- Hookean deformation in hair, 51
- Hopper flow, 871–872, **872**
- Hormonal influences
on acne, 460
on hair, 42–43, 48–49
on skin, 388
regulation of, 135
- Horny layer (stratum corneum)
layer of epidermis in skin, 4, 351
- Hot comb method of hair straighteners, 709
- Hot fills, 841–843
- Hot water bath testing of aerosols, 344
- Human testing procedures, 769–773
- Humectants (moisturizers and humectants)
in foundation makeups, 535
in hair setting/styling products, 639
in mouthwashes, 747
in shaving preparations, 503, 506, 511, 518
in skin moisturizers, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*)
in toothpastes, 726, 731–732
- Hyaluronic acid
in hair setting/styling products, 642
as humectant, 363, 364
as hydrophilic polymer, 268
in skin, 18
- Hydantoin
in dandruff products, 410
in mascaras, 566
as preservative, 286, 287
in shampoos, 624
- Hydrated silica in toothpastes, 728–729, 733, 737
- Hydration of ocular tissues, 84
- Hydration of skin, 352
- Hydrocarbon propellants for aerosols, 121, 339–342
- Hydrocarbon waxes, in lipsticks, 549
- Hydrocarbons, 323, 357
- Hydrochloric acid nail bleach, 592
- Hydrocolloid facial masks, 472, 481–482
- Hydrofluorocarbon (HFC)
propellants for aerosols, 341–342, 654, 661
- Hydrogen bonding in surfactants, 202–203
- Hydrogen bonds in hair, 62
- Hydrogen peroxide, 706
as antioxidant, 250, 252
in hair colorants/dyes, 687
in hair straighteners, 713
in hair, 67
in mouthwashes, 749
in nail bleach, 592
in over-the-counter remedies, 404
in permanent waves, 698, 704
photosensitivity and, 35
in shampoos, 607
in toothpastes, 735
- Hydrogenated castor oil
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452
in foundation makeups, 537
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 654, 664
in skin cleansers, 496
- Hydrogenated lanolin, 376, 380
- Hydrogenated palm oil, 375
- Hydrogenated polybutene, 499
- Hydrogenated rice bran wax, 265
- Hydrogenated starch, 267
- Hydrogenated starch
hydrolysate, in toothpastes, 731, 747
- Hydrogenated vegetable oil
comedogenicity of, 463
in lipsticks, 550
in skin care, 372
- Hydrolyzed wheat protein, 451
- Hydrolysis in skin, 353
- Hydrolysis vs. preservatives, 275
- Hydrolytic enzymes in skin, 16
- Hydrolyzed proteins, 451, 497, 598, 622
- Hydrolyzed keratin
in nail strengtheners, 595
in shampoos, 622
- Hydroperoxides in antioxidants, 248, 249
- Hydrophile/lipophile balance (HLB) in emulsions, 218–220, 221 (*t*), 224, 292
- Hydrophilic colloids, 311
- Hydrophilic portion of surfactants, 187, 188, 189
- Hydrophilic polymers
in emulsions, 222
in skin moisturizers, 268
- Hydrophobe/lipophobe interactions, 119
- Hydrophobic portion of surfactants, 187, 188, 189, 191, 193

- Hydrophobic starch foundation makeup, 538
- Hydrophobicity of hair, 46, 57–58, **58**
- Hydroquinones, 252, 397
- Hydroxy acid, 327
in permanent waves, 699
- Hydroxyacrylates, in hair setting/styling products, 659, 662
- Hydroxyalkyl, in shaving preparations, 505
- Hydroxyanisole, 252
- Hydroxybenzoic acid, 289, 312
- Hydroxybenzomopholine, in permanent hair colors, 684
- Hydroxyethylcellulose usage, 701
in cuticle softeners, 591
in depilatories, 720
in eyeliners, 569
in hair setting/styling products, 644–646, 665
rheological properties of, 244
in semipermanent hair colors, 682
in shampoos, 623
in shaving preparations, 509
in skin cleansers, 496
in temporary hair coloring, 675
in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxyethylmaleimide, in hair setting/styling products, 655, 662
- Hydroxyindole, in permanent hair colors, 684
- Hydroxyl radicals, 35, 249–250, 251
- Hydroxylated lanolin, in mascaras, 565, 566
- Hydroxylysine, in skin, 18
- Hydroxyproline, in skin, 18
- Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxypropyl guar
in hair setting/styling products, 644
in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxypropyl cellulose
in after-shave products, 517
in hair setting/styling products, 644
rheological properties of, 244
- Hydroxypropyl guar, in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, 628
in acne products, 468
in hair setting/styling products, 644
in shampoos, 623
- Hygroscopic agents for skin moisturization, 266, 267 (*t*)
- Hyperkeratotic lesions, 33
- Hypersensitivity of tooth in, 101–102
- Hypoallergenicity in labeling, 140
- Hypochlorites in nail bleach, 592
- Hyponychium in nails, 71, **72**
- Identifying product in labeling, 139
- Illipe butter, 309
- Imadazolidinyl urea
as preservative, 286, 287
in shampoos, 624
- Image analysis, in vivo, 777
- Immunosuppression and ultraviolet (UV) radiation, 28, 32
- Impedance (conductance) testing, 774
- Impellers, 804–805, **805, 806**, 811–813, **812, 813**
- Impermeable films and moist/in moisturizers, 264
- In vitro testing
performance and, 773–776
safety testing and, 767–768
- In vivo testing, performance, 776–781
- Indigo, 318
- Indolic hair dyes, 691–692, **691**
- Infant and postnatal hair, 41
- Infections of ocular tissues and eyes, 85, 86
- Inflammation of nails, 77
- Infringement of patents, 180–183
- Ingredient listing in labeling, 139, 158, 170
- Ingredient selection in new product developments, 122–123, 122
- Ingredient sourcing in new product developments, 122–123, 122
- Injection blow molding, 881
- Injection molding, 880
- Inner root sheath of hair, 39, **40**
- Innervation of ocular tissues and eyes, 80, 81
- Inositol
in skin cleansers, 497
in surfactants, 200
- Insecticides, 165
- Insensible perspiration of skin
(See Transepidermal water loss)
- Insoluble sodium phosphate (IMP) in toothpastes, 730
- Inspections
OTC drug manufacturers, 143–144, 143
U.S. regulation and, 133
- Instructions for labeling, 157
- Instrumentation for measurement of rheological additives, 238–239
- Intellectual property, 175–183
- Interfacial film development in emulsions, 216–217
- Interfacial tension and emulsions, 216
- Interlamellarly fixed water in emulsions, 228
- Interleukin and tanning, 15, 29, 398
- Intermediate filament in hair, 41, 44, 47, 50, 51, **52**, 61, 62
- Internal phase of emulsions, 212, 218, 228, 231
- International Color Handbook*, CTFA, 152
- International Cosmetic Ingredient Dictionary*, 167
- International Council on Harmonization (ICH), 145–146, 303
- International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145, 158, 159
- Intracellular adhesion molecules, ultraviolet radiation and, 29

- In-use studies, 777–780
- Involucrin, 9
- Iodates, in hair, 67
- Iodine, in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Iodopropyl butylcarbamate
in hair setting/styling products, 644, 645, 646, 649, 650, 664, 665
as preservative, 286, 287
- Ionic polymers and surfactants, 193
- Ionic surfactants, 193, 216, 217 (*t*),
- Ionized emulsifiers, 218
- Ionizing radiation damage and skin, 20
- Iris of eyes, **80**
- Iron, in hair, 49
- Iron oxide
blusher, 561
eyeliner, 569
eyeshadow, 570, 571
foundation makeup, 529, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541, 542
hair setting/styling products, 665
lipstick, 543, 546, 547
mascara, 563, 564, 565, 566
- Irritant contact dermatitis, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
- Irritation caused by surfactants, 191–192, 208–209
- Irritation from shampoo, 601
- Isethionates
as anionic surfactant, 491
in skin cleansers, 493
in surfactants, 198
- Isobornyl acrylate hair, in setting/styling products, 659
- Isobutane, in hair setting/styling products, 654
- Isobutylene, in hair setting/styling products, 655, 662
- Isobutylparaben
in hair setting/styling products, 649
as preservative, 286, 287
- Isocetyl alcohol, 221
- Isocetyl stearate
in foundation makeups, 533, 540
in hair setting/styling products, 649, 650, 654, 665
- Isoflavones as antioxidants, 255
- Isoparaffin
in hair setting/styling products, 644
in mascaras, 565, 566
- Isopentane, 653
- Isopropanolamine, in cuticle removers, 590
- Isopropyl alcohol
in over-the-counter remedies, 404
in permanent hair colors, 689
in shampoos, 623
in skin care, 371
- Isopropyl isostearate
comedogenicity of, 463
in lipsticks, 548
- Isopropyl myristate
in after-shave products, 516
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451
comedogenicity of, 463
as emulsifier, 221
in shaving preparations, 513
in skin care, 373, 374, 382
- Isopropyl palmitate
comedogenicity of, 463
as emulsifier, 221
- Isopropylparaben, as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Isostearamidopropyl dimethylamine shampoo, 629
- Isostearic acid
as emulsifier, 221
in foundation makeups, 533
in shaving preparations, 502, 505
- Isostearyl isostearate
comedogenicity of, 463
in skin cleansers, 498
- Isostearyl neopentanoate, in foundation makeups, 535, 542
- Isostearyl palmitate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Isostearyl stearoyl stearate
in foundation makeups, 535
in lipsticks, 548
- Isotretinoin, in acne products, 468
- Japanese Cosmetic Industry Association, 129
- Japanese cosmetic regulation, 150, 162–172
active ingredients for use in quasi-drugs and, 165
bleaches, skin bleaches, 396–397
color additives, 169
Comprehensive Licensing Standards (CLS), 166
CTFA Color Handbook and, 169
data requirements for registration in, 167–169, 169 (*t*)
definition of cosmetics vs. drugs, 163–165
foundation makeup, 523
ingredient regulations, 169
ingredients listed on label, 170
International Cosmetic Ingredient Dictionary, 167
Japanese Pharmacopoeia and, 166
Japanese Standards of Cosmetic Ingredients (JCSI) and, 166, 167
Japanese Standards of Food Additives and, 166
labeling, 169–172
licensing of cosmetics by category, 165–167
lipstick colorants, 544
“medicated cosmetics” defined by, 164–165
Ministry of Health and Welfare (MHW), 162
Officially Designated Coal-tar Colors, 167
Pharmaceutical Affairs Law No. 145, 163
preservatives, 169, 295, 296, 299
quasi-drugs defined by, 164–165

- Japanese cosmetic regulation
(*cont.*)
raw materials and, 166–167,
168–169
registration of cosmetic
products (*Todokede* vs.
Shonin) and, 167
registration of cosmetic
products, 170–171
safety and, 765–766
sale of cosmetics and, 163
Standard for Denatured
Alcohol for Industrial Use
and, 167
Japanese Industrial Property
Laws, 180
Japanese Pharmacopoeia, 166
Japanese Standards of Cosmetic
Ingredients (JCSI), 166, 167
Japanese Standards of Food
Additives, 166
Jasmine oil, 314
Jasmine wax, 310
JCIA, 129
Jjoba oil/wax, 309
as emulsifier, 221
in hair setting/styling
products, 642, 652
Juglone, 318
Juniper oil, 314
- Kaempferol as antioxidant, 255
Kahlweit (fish) diagram for
emulsions, 213, 214, 224,
230
Kaolin
in after-shave products, 520
in blushers, 561
as contamination source, 277
in foundation makeups, 524,
526, 529, 538
in masks, 472, 473, 476–477,
488
in nail white, 595–596
in over-the-counter remedies,
402, 403
in shaving preparations, 514
Karaya gum, 311
as contamination source, 277
in emulsions, 226
in hair setting/styling
products, 644
rheological properties of, 244
- Keratin
in hair colorants/dyes, 671
in hair, 41, 46–54, 61,
62–65, 695, 696
helix, 44
in nail menders, 599
in nails, 71, 73, 75
in ocular tissues and eyes,
82–83
in skin, 3, 8, 6–10, 365
sorption/desorption in, 54–55,
54
tensile properties of, 50–53,
50
Keratin associated proteins
(KAPs) in hair, 41, 48, 61
Keratin gene expression region
in hair, 40, 40
Keratin plug mechanism of
sweat reductions, 440
Keratinase in depilatories, 720
Keratinizing system of skin, 4–7
Keratinocytes in skin, 3–10, 8,
14–15, 29–31, 262, 386
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and,
29–31
Keratinosomes (Odland bodies)
in skin, 5–6, 16, 324, 367
Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (dry
eye), 85
Keratocytes in ocular tissues and
eyes, 83
Ketoconazole, in dandruff
products, 408, 409, 411
Keratothylin, 8
Kinins, ultraviolet (UV)
radiation and, 29
Knock-out experiments,
124–125
Kojic acid, 252, 312, 397
Kritchevsky condensate and
surfactants, 203
Kukuinut oil, 329
Kwashiorkor disorder and hair,
40, 43, 49
- L-serine, in skin care, 381
L-sodium glutamate, in skin
care, 381
Labeling
animal testing status of
labeling, 159, 161–162
batch numbers in labeling,
157–158
container size, 170
contents in labeling, 157
country of origin in labeling,
140, 159
efficacy, 161
E.U. regulation of, 156–159
expiration dating in labeling,
140, 157
Federal Trade Commission
(FTC) and, 146
formulation in labeling, 160
function of products in
labeling, 158
hypoallergenicity in labeling,
140
identifying product in
labeling, 139
ingredient listing in labeling,
139, 158, 160, 170
instructions in labeling, 157
International Nomenclature
Cosmetic Ingredients, 145,
158, 159
Japanese regulation of,
169–172
language of labeling, 159
manufacturer name and
address in labeling, 139,
157
method of manufacture in
labeling, 160
net contents (English/metric)
in labeling, 139
OTC drugs, 143
patent and trademarks on,
181–182
poison center notification in
labeling, 161
product information package
(PIP), 159–161
raw materials in labeling, 160
registration of cosmetic
products (Japan), 170–171
registration of manufacturers,
161
safety, 161
sunscreens, 424, 425
tamper-evident packaging and,
140
U.S. regulation and, 130, 132,
138–140

- warnings on label, 139–140, 157
- Lacquers in nail polishes, 573
- Lacrimal (tear) glands in ocular tissues and eyes, 80, 81, 83
- Lactamide MEA, in skin cleansers, 497
- Lactate, as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Lactate esters, in lipsticks, 549
- Lactic acid
 - in acne products, 468
 - in hair setting/styling products, 641, 644
 - as humectant, 365
 - as hygroscopic agent, 267
 - in shaving preparations, 513
 - in skin cleansers, 497
 - in skin care, 379
- Lactobacillus acidophilus* and dental caries, 98
- Lactose, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Lactylates in surfactants, 198
- Lakes (pigments)
 - in lipsticks, 546
 - in mascaras, 563
- Lamellar gel phase in emulsions, 216, 228
- Lamellar granules, 7
- Lamellar liquid crystalline phase in emulsions, 216
- Lamina lucida in skin, 5
- Laminar flow, 792
- Laminin 5 in skin, 388
- Laneth 15, in hair straighteners, 712
- Langerhans cells in skin, 4, 11, 20, 357
- Language of labeling, 159
- Lanolin, 118, 330–331, 705, 706
 - as emulsifier, 221
 - comedogenicity of, 463
 - in emulsions, 229
 - in hair setting/styling products, 641
 - in hair straighteners, 712
 - in lipsticks, 548, 550
 - in mascaras, 565, 566
 - in nail strengtheners, 595
 - in shaving preparations, 503, 504, 506, 511
 - in skin cleansers, 498
 - in skin care, 372, 374, 376, 380, 382
- Lanthionine, 63–64
 - formation during hair straightening, 709
 - formation during permanent waving, 698
- Lanugo or prenatal hair, 41
- Lard, 329–330
- Latex or rubber facial masks, 472, 479
- Lathering shaving cream, 502–504
- Lathering shaving sticks, 504
- Lauramide DEA
 - in hair setting/styling products, 660, 661
 - in shampoos, 629
- Lauramide MEA, in acne products, 464
- Lauramidopropyl betaine
 - in acne products, 464
 - in shampoos, 622
 - in skin cleansers, 497
- Lauramidopropyl dimethylamine in surfactants, 202
- Lauramine oxide, in shampoos, 607
- Laureth sulfates, 603
- Laureth-2 benzoate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451
- Laureth-3 carboxylic acid, in shampoos, 629
- Laureth-4
 - in acne products, 467
 - comedogenicity of, 463
 - as emulsifier, 219
- Laureth-7, in hair setting/styling products, 644
- Laureth-9, in foundation makeups, 535, 536
- Laureth-12, in acne products, 468
- Laureth-23, 705, 706
 - in hair setting/styling products, 640, 641, 654
 - in depilatories, 719
- Lauric acid
 - comedogenicity of, 463
 - in shampoos, 607
 - in shaving preparations, 502
- Lauroyl lysine, in foundation makeups, 529, 530
- Lauryl alcohol in surfactants, 199
- Lauryl lactate, in hair setting/styling products, 652
- Lauryl sulfate, 497, 602–603
- Lauryldimethylammonium-2-hydroxypropyl shampoo, 629
- Lavender oil, 314
- Lavender wax, 310
- Lawson, 318, 669
- Laxness of skin, 22, 33, 34
- Layers of skin, 3–4, 4
- Lead, in hair, 49
- Leaky hose mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Lechner spray system, 346
- Lecithin, 311, 530, 533, 541
- Left-handed helix in hair, 44, 44
- Lead, in hair, 49
- Leaky hose mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Lechner spray system, 346
- Lecithin, 311, 530, 533, 541
- Left-handed helix in hair, 44, 44
- Lemon oil, 314
- Lemongrass oil, 314
- Lens of eyes, 80
- Lentigo maligna, 28
- Letterpress printing for packaging, 884
- Leukonychia of nails, 76
- Licensing of cosmetics by category, Japanese regulation of, 165–167
- Lichen planus infection of nails, 75
- Lighteners, hair, 131, 692–694
- Lignoceric acid, in skin care, 370
- Lime soaps surfactants, 204
- Linear alkylbenzene sulfonates (LAS) shampoo, 605
- Linear wrinkles, 378
- Linoleic acid, 309, 329
- Lip balms, 401–403, 558–559
 - molding, 844–845
 - sunscreens, 433
- Lip gloss, 543, 558–559
- Lip moisturizers, 270
- Lipid base material for lipstick, 547
- Lipid peroxide (LOOH) in antioxidants, 251
- Lipid peroxy radicals (LOO·) antioxidants, 252

- Lipids, 323–331
 alpha-methylheptadecyl
 glyceryl ether (GE) as, 328
 animal sources of, 329–331
 as contamination source, 277
 botanicals as sources of,
 308–310
 ceramides as, 327–329
 cholesteryl sulfate as, 324
 cleaning by shampoos, 615
 in dental calculus (tartar), 34
 emulsions, 211, 220, 222,
 225, 280
 epidermal, 7
 fatty acids as, 324, 329–330
 glycerides as, 324, 329–330
 glyceryl ether (GE) as, 328
 hair, 46, 48–48, 61
 hydrocarbons as, 323
 hydroxy acids as, 327
 lanolin as, 330–331
 in moisturizers, 264
 in nails, 75
 natural, 324, 329–330
 neutral, 324
 oils as, 323
 penetration of skin by, 326
 petrolatum as, 326–327
 phospholipids, 324
 plant seed derived oils as, 323
 polar, 324
 silicones as, 323
 skin conductance after
 application of, 328, 328 (*t*)
 skin, 3, 6–9, 7 (*t*), 10, 13, 16,
 264, 323–324, 351–354,
 460, 461
 specialty lipids, 323–331
 sphingolipids as, 324
 sterols in, 324
 synthetic, 323
 transepidermal water loss
 (TEWL) after application,
 324, 325, 367, 374
 triglycerides as, 324, 329–330
 use of lipids on skin,
 325–326, 354–356, **355**,
 364–365
Lipliner pencils, 567–568
Lipocytes in skin, 4
Lipophilic materials, 116, 117,
 271
Liposome production, 825–826
Lipotropin, ultraviolet (UV)
 radiation and, 31
Lipstick, 119, 131, 166,
 543–558
 “flaming” to finish, 558
 amorphous hydrocarbon
 waxes in, 549
 antimicrobials in, 551
 antioxidants in, 551
 base ingredients, 551
 bismuth oxychloride in, 546
 blending of ingredients for,
 556–557
 bromoacid solvents for, 547,
 548
 candelilla wax in, 549
 carnauba wax in, 549
 castor oil in, 548
 characteristics of, 543
 chromium pigments in, 546
 cocoa butter in, 550
 colorant in, 543–544
 coloring lips with, 544
 covering of lips by, 544
 eosin in, 545, 549
 ferric ferrocyanide
 (ultramarine blue), 546
 filler in, 547
 filling, hot, 844
 formulations for, 551–556
 fragrance in, 551
 frosted lipsticks, 552
 glossy lipstick, 552, 553
 hydrogenated vegetable oil in,
 550
 iron oxide pigments in, 543,
 546, 547
 lakes pigments for, 546
 lanolin in, 550
 lip balms, 558–559
 lip gloss, 543, 558–559
 lipid base material for, 547
 liquid fatty alcohols in, 548
 manufacture of, 556–558
 matte lipstick, 553–554
 microcrystalline waxes in, 549
 mineral oil in, 549
 moisturizing lipsticks, 554,
 555, 556
 molding of, 557–558,
 844–845
 mood lipstick, 552
 oils in, 547
 organic pigments for, 546
 paraffin oils in, 550
 pearlaceous pigments in, 543,
 547
 petroleum jelly in, 550
 pigments in, 545
 polyethylene in, 550
 preparation of ingredients for,
 556–557
 rheological additives for, 240,
 241, 245
 silicones in, 550
 staining dyes in, 545
 staining of lips by, 544
 talc, 547
 titanium dioxide in, 543,
 545–547
 transfer-resistant lipstick, 554
 ultramarine blue, 546
 vacuum processing of, 557
 waxes in, 548, 549, 557
 wetting agents in, 551
Liquid crystal surfactants, 192
Liquid crystalline phase in
 emulsions, 217
Liquid extracts of botanicals,
 307
Liquid paraffin, in skin care, 373
Liquid soaps, 400
Liquid-in-liquid dispersion
 system for emulsions, 230
Liquid-powder (anhydrous)
 foundations, 541–543
Liquid-solid mixing systems,
 826–829, **826**
Lithium carbonate hair
 straighteners, 712
Lithium hydroxide, 701, 721
Lithium stearate, in foundation
 makeups, 538
Lithography printing for
 packaging, 884–885
Locust bean gum, 226, 311
Loose powder foundations, 541
Loricrin in skin, 9
Loss of hair, 43–44
Lotions, 118, 131, 165, 358,
 359, 360
Low-S proteins in hair, **44**
Lubricant characteristics of in
 shaving preparations,
 501–502, 506–507

- Lubricity and rheological additive, 235
- Luffa, 472, 478
- Lunula of nails, 71, 72, 73, 589
- Luster (gloss or polish) of tooth, 741
- Luster in hair, 50, 58–59
- Luteolin, 316, 319
- Lycopene, 318
- Lye hair straighteners, 709
- Lymphatic vessels of skin, 19, 352
- Lymphocytes in ocular tissues and eyes, 81
- Lyotropic hexagonal phase in emulsions, 216
- Lysine in hair, 45, 67
- Lysinoalanine in hair, 63, 64
- Lysosomes in skin, 15
- Machinery (manufacture of cosmetics)
 equipment as source of contaminations, 278–279
 mixing machines and effect on rheological additive, 240–242
 sterilization procedures as, 278–279
 testing for contamination in, 279
- Macroemulsions, 192, 212, 222–224, 230, 232
- Macrofibril in hair, 44
- Macrophage colony-stimulating factor, 15
- Magnesium
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94
 in hair, 49
 as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Magnesium aluminum silicate
 in acne products, 464, 467, 468
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
 in foundation makeups, 533–535
 in masks, 473
 rheological properties of, 244
 in toothpastes, 733
- Magnesium ascorbyl phosphate, 397
- Magnesium carbonate
 in after-shave products, 520
 in blushers, 561
 in depilatories, 720
 in foundation makeups, 538
 particle size, 853
 in shaving preparations, 514
- Magnesium myristate
 in eyeshadows, 570, 571
 in foundation makeups, 538, 540
- Magnesium stearate
 in shaving preparations, 514
 in surfactants, 198
- Magnesium sulfate
 in hair setting/styling products, 642
 in permanent waves, 704
 in skin cleansers, 498
- Makeup powder, 131
- Makeup remover, 131
- Malassezia furfur* (dandruff organism), 408
- Male-pattern alopecia, 44
- Maleic anhydride
 in shampoos, 619
 in surfactants, 199
- Malignancies of skin, 20, 28
 ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 32–33
- Malpighian (prickle) layer of epidermis in skin, 4, 5
- Maltitol, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Malvidin as antioxidant, 255
- Manageability of hair, 632
- Manganese, in hair, 49
- Manganese violet eyeshadow, 571
- Mango seed oil, 309
- Mannitol, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Manufacturability of products in new product developments, 115
- Manufacture of cosmetics, 787–874
 alternatives to hammer mills, 859–860
 antiperspirants/deodorant fills, 845–846
 axial flow, 802, **803**
 ball mills, 832–835, **833**
 batch emulsion processor, 819–822, **820**
 batch turnover rate, 848
 binders, 856–857
 blending equipment, 853–857, **854**, 855 (*t*)
 bulk powders storage, 871–873
 cavitation of liquids in, 823
 cohesive mixing, 788
 colloid mills, 830–832, **831**
 continuous high pressure homogenizers, 822–824, **822**, **823**
 continuous processes, 852, 853 (*t*)
 cooling for emulsion products, 866–868
 cream fills, 841–843
 deagglomeration in, 828
 dispersion equipment, 819–822, **820**
 dispersion fills, 841–843
 distributive mixing, 788
 dry continuous processing, 870–873
 dry mixing systems, 852–865
 emulsification process, 813–816, **816**
 emulsion cooling, 864–856
 emulsion hair conditioner, 864–869
 emulsion processing equipment, 800–801, 813–815, 816–819, **816–820**
 emulsion temperature, 815
 equipment for, 787–874
 filling processes, 836–846
 filtration, 788
 flocculation in, 828
 flow patterns, 802–804, **803**, 810–811
 fluid flow, 788
 Godet product fills, 843–844
 hair conditioner emulsions, 868
 hair gels, 868
 hammer mills, 858–859
 heat exchanger, **801**
 heat transfer, 788, 796–799, **797**, 800–801, 849–851

- Manufacture of cosmetics (*cont.*)
- high-flow/low-shear
 - homogenizers, 820
 - high-shear mixers, 819–822, **820**, 848–849
 - high-shear/low-flow
 - homogenizers, 821
 - high-viscosity filling, 839–840
 - high-viscosity mixture, 810–813, **812**, **813**
 - homogenizers, 802–805, **802**, **804**
 - hopper flow, 871–872, **872**
 - hot fills, 841–843
 - impellers, 804–805, **805**, **806**, 811–813, **812**, **813**
 - lip balm fills, 844–845
 - liposome production, 825–826
 - lipstick fills, 844–845
 - liquid-solid wet mixing systems, 826–829, **826**
 - loose powder filling, 861
 - loose powder mixing, 860–861
 - low-viscosity filling, 837–838
 - marine type propeller mixers, **804**, **805**
 - mass transfer, 788, 851–852
 - milling equipment, 830–836, **831**, **833**, **836**
 - mixing, 770, 788, 848
 - mixing index, 808–810, **809**
 - mixing quality, 790–791
 - mixing time, 808–810, **809**
 - multiphase wet mixing systems, 813–814
 - Newtonian flow, 793–795
 - orientation of emulsification phases, 814–815
 - packaging lines, 841, **842**
 - paddle mixers, 804
 - particle size, 853, **853**
 - pearlizing agents, 838–839, 857
 - portable mixers, **806**
 - powder mixers, conventional, 855 (*t*)
 - power consumption of mixers, 806–808, **808**
 - pressed powder filling, 861–863
 - production design
 - considerations, 869–870
 - pumping capacity, 807, **808**
 - radial flow, 802, **803**
 - reactors for cosmetic industry, 799–800
 - Reynolds number, 792–793
 - rheology of mixing, 791–796
 - scale-up, 846–852
 - scale-up for powders, 863–865
 - scale-up of continuous systems, 869
 - segregative mixing, 788
 - shear rates and viscosity, 792–796, **793**, 848–849
 - shearing equipment, 857–859
 - shear-sensitive filling, 840–841
 - single-phase mixing, 801–802
 - stirred tanks, 799–800
 - suppository fills, 844–845
 - surfactants, 815
 - suspension of solids, 829–830
 - tangential flow, 802, **803**
 - temperature and emulsions, 815–816
 - thinning of viscosity, 803
 - three-roll mills, 835–836, **836**
 - turbine impellers, 805–806
 - unit operations, 787–790
 - velocity head, 807, **808**
 - vessel shape on mixing, 810
 - viscosity, 810–811
 - warm fills, 841–843
 - water-in-silicone emulsions, **824**, 824–825
 - wet continuous process, 865–870, **866**
 - wet mixing systems, 801–802
- Manufacturer name and address in labeling, 139, 157
- Marasmus disorder and hair, 40, 43
- Marigold, 316, 318
- Marine extracts in shampoos, 602
- Marine type propeller mixers, **804**, **805**
- Marketability of products in new product developments, 113, 114
- Mascara, 131, 564–566
- anhydrous, 564, 565
 - cake (block) mascara, 564
 - characteristics of, 564
 - curling effect, 566
 - filling process for, 839–840
 - flakeproof, 565
 - oil-in-water emulsion, 565, 566, 567
 - rheological additives for, 245
 - smudgeproof, 564, 565
 - water-based, 565
 - water-in-oil emulsion, 565
 - waterproof, 564, 565
 - waxes, 566
- Mascara for hair, 663, 665
- Masks, 471–483
- abrasives in, 471
 - active ingredients in, 477
 - additives to, 472
 - argillaceous earth (clay) masks, 473–478
 - bentonite in, 474–476, 478, 482
 - cationic materials in, 478
 - clay in, 471–478, 482
 - emollients in, 477
 - emulsifiers in, 477
 - emulsion system in, 475 (*t*)
 - gums in, 477, 481
 - hydrocolloid masks, 472, 481–482
 - irritation from, 472
 - kaolin in, 476–477
 - latex or rubber masks, 472, 479
 - marketing of, 472
 - pH levels of, 472, 474 (*t*), 476
 - polymers in, 477
 - polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) in, 480
 - resin-strip type masks, 472
 - scrub-type, 476 (*t*)
 - smectite in, 475–476
 - stability of, 477, 478
 - surfactants in, 477, 478
 - vinyl or peelable masks, 480, 481
 - viscosity of, 478
 - wax type, 472, 478–479
 - wet earth treatments as, 471
- Mass transfer, 788, 851–852
- Massage creams, 360, 374, 376

- Mast cells in skin, 15, 17
- Matricaria chamomilla extract, 397
- Matrix of hair, 44, 50–52, 55
- Matrix of nails, 71, 72, 72, 73
- Mechanical blended pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- Mechanical properties of hair, 48
- Mechanical/heat blended pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- “Medicated cosmetics” defined by Japanese regulations, 164–165
- Medula of hair, 39, 40, 44, 48
- Meissner corpuscles in skin, 19
- Melaleuca oil, 315
- Melanin
antioxidants and, 250
bleaches, skin bleaches, 394–398, 394
hair, 67, 68, 69
skin, 10, 29–31, 35–36
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23
- Melanocyte stimulating hormone and UV radiation, 31
- Melanocytes in skin, 4, 10–11
- Melanoma, 28, 33
- Melanosomes in skin, 10–11, 29–31
- Men’s hair colorants, 688
- Menthol
in acne products, 465
in after-shave products, 516, 517
in nail strengtheners, 594
in over-the-counter remedies, 404
in shaving preparations, 504, 513
in toothpastes, 733–734, 737
- Menthyl anthranilate, 421
- Menthyl lactate, in mouthwashes, 747
- Meradimate in sunscreens, 421
- Mercaptans
in depilatories, 717–718, 721
in hair, 66
in permanent waves, 696–698, 701–706
- Mercaptoethanol, in depilatories, 721
- Mercaptopropionic acid, in depilatories, 720, 721
- Mercury, in hair, 49
- Mercury compounds, 134, 301
- Meridiamate sunscreens, 417
- Merkel cells in skin, 4
- Mesenchymal cells in skin, 387
- Mesophase formation in shampoos, 613–614
- Metallic hair dyes, 691
- Metalloproteinase, 15
- Methacrylate copolymers, in shampoos, 623
- Methenamine, 286, 287
- Methicone, in foundation makeups, 530
- Methionine in hair, 67, 68
- Method of manufacture in labeling, 160
- Methoxypropanediol, in shaving preparations, 504
- Methyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
- Methyl ethyl ketone, in nail polishes, 579
- Methyl gluceth-20, 267
- Methyl gluceth-10, 664
- Methyl groups, microbial growth, effect of, 281
- Methyl salicylate
in mouthwashes, 747
in over-the-counter remedies, 404
in toothpastes, 737
- Methylbenzethonium chloride, in O.T.C. remedies, 404
- Methylcellulose
in cuticle softeners, 591
in masks, 477
rheological properties of, 244
in shampoos, 623
- Methylcoumarin, 134
- Methyldibromoglutaronitrile, 286, 287
- Methylene chloride, 134
- Methylisobutyl ketone, in nail polishes, 579
- Methylisothiazolinone
in hair setting/styling products, 286, 287, 645, 646
in shampoos, 624
- Methylparaben
in eyeliners, 569
in eyeshadows, 570, 571
in foundation makeups, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541
in hair setting/styling products, 645, 646
in hair straighteners, 713
in mascaras, 565, 566
as preservative, 286, 287, 289, 295
in shampoos, 624, 629
- Mica
in blushers, 561
in eyeshadows, 570, 571
in foundation makeups, 525, 528, 529, 539, 540, 541, 542
in hair setting/styling products, 665
in nail polishes, 581
particle size, 853
- Micellar catalysis in surfactants, 192
- Micelle formation by surfactants, 189–192, 190
in emulsions, 213, 224, 230
in shampoos, 603
- Microbial contaminants
preservatives, 273
U.S. regulation and, 136–137
- Microbial limits in finished products and preservatives, 302–303
- Microbial metabolism and growth vs. preservatives, 274–276
- Microbial resistance to preservatives, 276
- Micrococci, as contaminants, 283
- Microcrystalline wax
in hair setting/styling products, 652, 664
in lipsticks, 549
in masks, 478
in skin care, 373, 376, 381
- Microemulsions, 212–213, 222, 224, 229–232, 383
- Microorganisms most frequently found in contaminated products, 283, 283 (*t*)

- Microorganisms for preservative testing, 297–298
- Microvilli lining of ocular tissues and eyes, 81
- Mild (baby) shampoos, 625, 626
- Milks, skin milks, 360
- Milling equipment, 830–836, **831, 833**
- Mineral oil, 118, 378
as contamination source, 277
as emulsifier, 221, 227
in hair setting/styling products, 652
in hair straighteners, 712
in lipsticks, 549
in masks, 478
rheological properties of, 236
in shaving preparations, 503, 504, 505
in skin care, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 381, 382, 384
- Minimum erythema dose (MED) for skin, 26, 424
- Ministry of Health and Welfare (MHW), Japanese, 162
- Mink oil, 221
- Misbranded defined, U.S. regulation and, 132–133
- Mixed micelle formation in surfactants, 191–192
- Mixing, 788, 789 (*t*), 848–849
- Mixing of emulsion, 816–819
- Mixing, equipment for, 796 (*t*)
- Mixing, impellers for, 804, 816
- Mixing index, 808–810, **809**
- Mixing machinery and effect on rheological additive, 241–242
- Mixing, rheology of, 791, 802–804
- Mixing time, 808
- Modified occlusive plug
mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Modifiers in hair setting/styling products, 639–640
- Moisture balance in skin/skin care products, 357–358, 365–366, 366, 385–386
- Moisture content of nails, 73
- Moisture content of skin, 9, 9, 16–17, 261–263, 351–352, 357–358, 365–366, 366, 385–386
- Moisturizers and humectants, 118, 131, 261–272
- botanicals as sources of, 310–311
- efficacy testing of skin moisturizers, 269
- environment factors in
moisture content of skin, 268–269, 363–364, **364, 365**
- hair moisturizers, 269–270
- humectants in skin
moisturizers, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*), 361–367, 363 (*t*), **364, 365**
- hydrophilic polymers in skin moisturizers, 268, 365
- hygroscopic agents for skin moisturization, 266, 267 (*t*)
- irritation caused by, 366–367
- lip moisturizers, 270
- lipids in, 264
- nail creams, 592–593
- natural moisturizing factor (NMF) of skin and, 266–268, 358, 365, 385
- occlusive agents in skin moisturizers, 264–266, 265 (*t*)
- product water loss reduction with, 270–271
- shaving preparations, 504
- skin care products, 363–367
- skin moisturizers, 261–270
- softening of skin using, 366
- transepidermal water loss (TEWL) ratios in skin and, 262–264, 266, 268, 324, 325, 367, 374
- Moisturizing base nail coat, 585
- Moisturizing cleansing gel, 498
- Moisturizing creams, 360
- Molding of lipsticks, 557–558
- Molds, as contaminants, 283, 284
- Monensin, 397
- Monilethrix, 43
- Monoethanolamides, 604
- Monoethanolamine, 705, 706
in cuticle removers, 590
in hair colorants/dyes, 688
in permanent hair colors, 690
in permanent waves, 700
- Monoglyceride sulfate, in shampoos, 606
- Monoglycerides in surfactants, 204–205
- Morphological components of hair, 44–49, **44**
- Morphology of skin, 3–4, **4**
- Moskene, 151
- Mousse/aerosol type sunscreens, 431, 433
- Mousses, 652–653, 654
- Mouth sprays/drops, 753
- Mouth, teeth, and oral care, 87–107
acid solubility of tooth and, 90, 91, 98–99
alignment of tooth and, 88–89
anticalculus agents for, 96
aphthous ulcers (canker sores) in, 92 of, 106
bacterial or microbial flora of, 92–98, 103–105
Bacteroides forsythus as agent of periodontitis in, 101
bad breath, 94, 103–105
bleaching or whitening of tooth, 103
blood vessels of tooth, 89
breath mints, 104, 105
breath sprays, 104, 105
brushing, 96, 98
calcium in, 90–91, 97
calculus (tartar) deposits in, 93–96, 94
caries (decay) in, 90–99
cemento-enamel junction in tooth, 89, **89**, 90
cementum in tooth, 89, **89**, 101–102
cetylpyridinium chloride as preventive of gingivitis, 100
chlorhexidine as preventive of gingivitis, 100
cosmetic solutions to common problems, 88 (*t*)
crown of tooth, 89, **89**
dental enamel, 89–91, 92, 95
dental pellicle, 91, 92–93
dentin of tooth, 89–91, **89**, 101–102

- dental tubules of tooth, 90–91, 102
- dry mouth (xerostomia), 105–106
- enamel of tooth, 89, 89, 90–91, 95, 97
- flossing, 96
- fluids in, 91
- fluoride, 94–100
- Fusobacterium nucleatum* as cause of gingivitis, 100
- gingival crevicular fluid, 92
- gingival margin of tooth, 89, 91
- gingivitis, 91, 99–101, 736
- gums (gingiva), 89, 90, 91
- hypersensitivity of tooth, 101–102
- Lactobacillus acidophilus* as cause of dental caries, 98
- lip moisturizers, 270
- mouthwashes, 104, 105
- nutrition and dental health, 88
- occlusal fissure, 89, 90
- oral malodor, 94, 103–105
- periodontal diseases, 99–101
- periodontal ligament of tooth, 89, 90
- periodontitis, 91, 99–101
- pH levels, critical pH, teeth/in tooth, 90, 92
- plaque, 93–98
- Porphyromonas gingivalis* as agent of periodontitis, 101
- Prevotella intermedia* as agent of gingivitis, 100
- primary (baby) teeth, 87–88
- problems of, 95–106
- recession of tooth, 101
- remineralization of tooth, 99
- rinses, 98
- rinsing, 104, 105
- root of tooth, 89, 89
- saliva and, 91–98
- salivary glands and, 89, 91–92
- secondary (adult) teeth, 88
- sensitivity in tooth, 91, 101–102
- Sjogren's syndrome (dry mouth), 105
- soft tissues of, 92
- sores or ulcers in, 92
- spaces (interproximal spaces) around teeth, 90, 94
- staining of tooth, 102–103
- Streptococcus mutans* as agent of dental caries, 98
- sugarless gum, 98
- tartar deposits, 93, 94–96
- teeth, 87–91, 89
- third molar (wisdom teeth), 88
- tooth anatomy, 89, 90–91, 101–102
- tooth pulp, 89, 89
- toothpastes (*See* Toothpaste and dentifrices)
- triclosan as preventive of gingivitis, 100
- volatile sulfur compounds in bad breath, neutralization of, 105
- wisdom teeth, 88
- xerostomia, 105–106
- zinc salts in toothpastes, 96
- Mouthwashes, 104, 105, 131, 164, 166, 745–753
- active ingredients in, 749
- alcohol in, 746
- antibacterial function of, 745
- antimicrobials in, 748
- antiseptic properties of, 747
- breath-freshening type, 752
- buffers in, 749
- cationic quaternary antibacterials in, 748
- cetylpyridinium chloride (CPC), 748
- chlorine dioxide in, 749
- clinical tests of, 752
- cosmetic type, 745
- emulsions in, 747
- flavoring in, 745–747
- fluoride in, 749
- fluoride type, 745
- foaming characteristics of, 745
- formulations for, 750–751
- functions of, 745, 746
- humectants in, 747
- hydrogen peroxide in, 749
- ingredients of, 746
- manufacture of, 751
- menthyl lactate, 747
- methyl salicylate, 747
- packaging of, 751–752
- phenolics in, 747
- phenyl salicylate, 747
- polysorbates in, 748
- potassium acesulfame in, 747
- prebrushing rinse type, 745
- saccharin in, 747
- safety of, 752
- sanguinaria extract, 748
- sodium bicarbonate, 750
- sodium saccharin in, 747
- solubilizers in, 747
- solvents in, 746
- spray/drop fresheners, 753
- surfactants in, 747
- sweeteners in, 747
- testing of, 752–753
- triclosan in, 748
- viscosity, 745
- water in, 746
- xanthan gum, 750
- zinc salts in, 749
- Mucin in ocular tissues and eyes, 81, 83
- Mucocutaneous end organs in skin, 19
- Mucopolysaccharides, in saliva, 91
- Multiphase wet mixing systems, 813–814
- Multiphase oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 223, 226–228, 227
- Multiple emulsions, 213, 382, 384, 385
- Muscles of skin, 19
- Musculature of ocular tissues and eyes, 80
- Musk ambrette, 134
- Musk tibetene, 151
- Myricetin as antioxidant, 255
- Myristic acid
- comedogenicity of, 463
- in shaving preparations, 502
- in skin cleansers, 498
- Myristyl myristate
- comedogenicity of, 463
- in hair setting/styling products, 652
- Myrrh oil, 315
- Nacreous pigments in nail polishes, 580–582

- N-acyl methyltaurates (AMT), in shampoos, 605
- n-Acyl polypeptide condensates, in shampoos, 606
- N-acyl sarcosinates, in shampoos, 605
- Nail bleach, 591–592
- Nail coat, moisturizing base, 585
- Nail cream, 131, 592–593, 592
- Nail hardeners, 75, 587
- Nail plate of nails, 71–73, **72**
- Nail polish, 131, 166, 573–588, 573
- abrasive (dry) nail polish, 596–597
 - acrylic polymers in, 575
 - additives to, 582–583
 - adipates in, 577
 - alcohols, 578
 - application of, 574
 - aromatic solvents in, 578
 - base polish, 584
 - bismuth oxychloride, 581
 - buffing powders, 596–597
 - characteristics of, 574
 - citrates in, 577
 - clays in, 583
 - clear nail base coat, 584
 - clear nail top coat, 585
 - colorants in, 580–582
 - control of productions in, 583–584
 - cuticle massage cream, 593
 - cuticle remover, 589–591
 - cuticle softener, 131, 591
 - drier for, 586, 597–598
 - dry nail polish, 596–597
 - drying time, 574, 577, 578, 597–598
 - esters in, 578
 - evaporation rates of solvents in, 579, 579 (*t*)
 - film-formers in, 575–576
 - formation of, 573–575
 - formulas for, 584–587
 - glossy color and appearance in, 574
 - hardener for nails in, 587
 - history of, 573
 - innocuousness of, 574, 578
 - lacquers in, 573
 - mending compositions, 598–599
- mica in, 581
- moisturizing base nail coat, 585
- nacreous pigments in, 580–582
- nitrocellulose in, 573, 575–576, 598, 599
- no-nitrocellulose base coat, 585
- pearl essence (guanine) in, 581
- pearlaceous material in, 581
- phthalates in, 577
- pigments in, 580–582
- pink nail polish, 586
- plasticizers in, 576–577
- polish remover, 587
- polymers in, 575
- production of, 583–584
- raw materials for, 575–583
- red nail polish, 586
- resins in, 577
- rheological additives for, 240, 245, 582, 583
- rhodamines in, 573
- safety of, 574, 578
- settling of, 582
- solvents in, 577–579
- stability of, 574–575, 582
- strengtheners for nails in, 582, 594–595
- toluene in, 578, 584
- toxicity in, 578
- viscosity of, 576, 579, 582
- wear characteristics of, 574, 575
- xylene, 578
- Nail polish remover, 131, 587
- Nail white, 595–596
- Nailbed in nails, 71–73, **72**
- Nails, 14, 71–78
- absence of (anonychia), 74
 - artificial fingernails, 598
 - artificial nail use, 74, 75
 - Beau's lines in, 76
 - bleach, 591–592
 - blood vessels of, 73–74
 - brittleness of, 75
 - calcium in, 73
 - Candida* infections in, 75, 77
 - composition of, 73
 - connective tissue of, **72**
 - cuticle of, 71, **72**, 73, 589
 - dermatitis and, 74, 75
 - development of, 72–73
 - diagnosis of illness using, 71, 76–77
 - discoloration of, 77
 - dorsal nail plate of, **72**
 - elongators, artificial nails, 598
 - epidermis and, **72**, 73
 - epithelium of nailbed in, 73
 - fat content of, 73
 - finger- vs. toenail growth rates, 72, 74
 - formation of, 72–73
 - fungal infections of, 75, 76–77
 - gelatin use and, 75
 - growth rate of, 72–74
 - handedness determined by lunula/nailbed in, 71
 - hardeners for, 75
 - histology of, 73
 - hyponychium in, 71, **72**
 - infection of, 75, 76, 77
 - inflammation of, 77
 - keratin in, 71, 73, 75
 - keratinizing structures of, 71
 - leukonychia of, 76
 - lichen planus infection of, 75
 - lipids in, 73, 75
 - lunula of, 71, 72, 73, 589
 - matrix of, 71, 72, **72**, 73
 - mending compositions, 598–599
 - moisture content of, 73, 592–593
 - morphology, 71–78
 - nail plate of, 71, 72, 73
 - nail products and U.S. regulation, 135
 - nail unit of, 71
 - nailbed in, 71, **72**, 73
 - nutritional factors affecting, 74
 - onychocytes in, 72–73
 - onychomycosis in, 76–77
 - paronychia in, 77
 - pathologies of, 74–77
 - pitting of, 76
 - prenatal development of, 72
 - proximal nail fold of, 71, 72, 73
 - Pseudomonas* infections in, 75, 77

- psoriasis and, 75–77
ridging (onychorrhexis) in, 75
separation of, from nailbed (onycholysis), 75
shedding of (onychomadesis), 75
splitting (onychoschizia) in, 76
spoon-shaped (koilonychia), 76
striations (onychorrhexis) in, 75
structure of, 71, **72**
trauma to, 75
ultrastructure of, 73
varnish/polish removers and, 75
varnish/polishes for, 75
whitening of, 76
yeast infections of, 75
yellow nail syndrome and, 74, 77
- Naphthol, in permanent hair colors, 684, 690
- Naringin as antioxidant, 255
- National Formulary and defining drugs, 131
- Natural lipid, 324
- Natural moisturizing factor (NMF) of skin, 266–268, 358, 365, 385
- “Natural product” defined, 305–306
- “Naturally derived” defined, 305
- “Nature identical” defined, 306
- Neomelanogenesis in skin, 25
- Neopentyl glycol dicaprylate/dicaprate, in foundation makeups, 535, 542
- Neoplasms in skin, 21, 22, 33, 34
- Nerve growth factor, 15
- Nerves in skin, 18–19
- Net contents (English/metric) in labeling, 139
- Neurocutaneous skin biology, 388–389
- Neutralizer
in cold waving processes, 704
in hair setting/styling products, 658
in hair straighteners, 711
- Newton/meters to measure rheological additive, 236
- Newtonian flow, **794**
- Newtonian fluids in rheological additive, 236, **237**, 793, **794**, 795
- Newton’s rings phenomenon and surfactants, 187
- Niacinamide, in skin cleansers, 497
- Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH), ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23
- Night creams, 131, 360, 374, 376
- Nitric acid, in nail polishes, 575
- Nitric oxide, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Nitrites, 151
- Nitro-2-bromo-propanediol, 290, 292
- Nitroaminophenols, in hair colorants/dyes, 676, 678–679, **678**
- Nitrocellulose, in nail polishes, 573, 575–576, 598–599
- Nitrophenylenediamines, in hair colorants/dyes, 676–678, **677**
- Nitrosamines, 134, 151, 607
- No-lye hair straightener, 712
- Non-aerosol sprays, 120–121
- Non-Newtonian fluids in rheological additives, 236, 794
- Non-U.S. manufacturers and U.S. regulation and, 137
- Nonammonia alkalizers, in hair colorants/dyes, 688
- Nonionic emulsions emulsions, 220
- Nonionic polymers and surfactants, 193
- Nonionic surfactants, 191–193, 195, 202–207, 208, 494
in emulsions, 217–218, 217 (*t*), 227
microbial growth in, 280
in preservatives, 292
in shampoos, 606–608
- Nonkeratinous proteins in hair, 61
- Nonmelanoma skin cancers (NMSC), 33
- Nonoxynol 10
in hair setting/styling products, 655
in nail strengtheners, 594
- Nonoxynol-9, as emulsifier, 219
- Nonoxynols, in shampoos, 608
- Nonperoxide cold wave lotion, 706
- Nonproteinaceous material in hair, 48–49
- Norbixin, 317
- Nordihydroguaiaretic acid, 252, 253, 312
- North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 179
- Noxious sensory stimuli testing, 772
- Nuclear remnant of hair, **44**
- Nutrients for microbial growth, in products, 280–281
- Nutrition and oral care, 88
- Nutritional effects
on skin, 388
on nails, 74
on hair, 40, 43
- Nylon
in eyeshadows, 570
in foundation makeups, 529, 530, 540, 542
in nail polishes, 582
- Oat flour, 472
masks, 478
- Oatmeal, 311
- Occlusal fissure in tooth, **89**, 90
- Occlusion of skin in skin care products, 357
- Occlusive agents in skin moisturizers, 264–266, 265 (*t*)
- Occlusive plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Octacalcium phosphate, in dental calculus (tartar), 94
- Octadecanoic acid in surfactants, 198
- Octinoxate in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421

- Octisalate in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421
- Octocrylene in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421
- Octodecyl stearate, in skin cleansers, 498
- Octoxynol-9, in nail strengtheners, 595
- Octylacrylamide, in hair setting/styling products, 661
- Octyldodecanol, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Octyldodeceth-20, in skin care, 375
- Octyldodecyl neopentanoate, in foundation makeups, 542
- Octyldodecyl stearate, in moisturizers, 265
- Octylhydroxystearate, in lipsticks, 548
- Octylpalmitate
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452
in eyeshadows, 570, 571
in foundation makeups, 537, 540, 541, 542
in hair setting/styling products, 649
in lipsticks, 548
- Ocular tissues and eye, 79–86
allergic reactions in, 84–85, 768–769, 771
anterior chamber of eyes in, **80**
apocrine sweat glands in, 80
blink reflex in, 80, 83
blood vessels of, 81–82
Bowman's layer in, 82
bulbar conjunctiva of eyes in, **80**
Candida infection of, 85
ciliary bodies of eyes, **80**
collagen in, 82
conjunctiva of, 81–82
conjunctival tissue in, 79
contact lens use and, 84, 86
contaminated products and, 284
cornea of, **80**, **80**, 82–84
corneal stroma in, 82
cosmetics, entry into eye, 79, 85–86
- Descemet's membrane in, 83
dry eye conditions in, 85
endothelium in, 83
epithelium of, 81, 82
eyelids as, 79–81
glycocalyx in, 81
glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) in, 82
goblet cells in, 81, 83
hair follicles in, 80
hemidesmosomes in, 81
hydration of, 84
infections of, 85, 86, 284
inflammation of eyelids in, 82, 84–85
innervation of, 80, 81
iris of eyes, **80**
irritancy testing in, 768–769, 771
keratin in, 82–83
keratoconjunctivitis sicca (dry eye), 85
keratocytes in, 83
lacrimal (tear) glands in, 80, 81, 83
lens of eyes, **80**
lymphocytes in, 81
microvilli lining of, 81
mucin in, 81, 83
musculature of, 80
oxygen absorption by, 84
photoallergic reactions of, 85
posterior chamber of eyes in, **80**
precorneal tear layer in, 79–80
proteoglycans in, 82
sebaceous glands in, 80
staphylococcal infection of, 85
stroma in, 82
submucosal lamina propria in, 81
tear drainage in, 80, 81
tear layer of, 83
toxic reactions in, 84–85
transparency of cornea in, 84
vitreous body of eyes, **80**
- Odland bodies, 5–6, 16, 324, 367
- Officially Designated Coal-tar Colors, Japanese regulation, 167
- Oil in emulsions, 214, 223
- Oil phase components of in skin care products, 362
- Oil type sunscreens, 431, 433
- Oil-based foundation makeup, 526, 530, 532–535
- Oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 212, 214, 216, 220, 222–226, 280, 453, 532–535, 565, 566
in shaving preparations, 505
in skin care products, 361, 370, 371, 376, 380
in sunscreens, 428–429, 428
- Oil-in-water-in-oil (O/W/O) emulsions, 213, 382, 384
- Oils, 116, 117, 118, 119
as contamination source, 277
foundation makeup, 535
in hair setting/styling products, 642, 648
as lipid, 323
in lipsticks, 547
in shaving preparations, 503, 506
in skin care products, 362, 367, 370, 371
in skin, 367, 462–465
- Oily skin (*See* Acne products)
- Ointment type sunscreens, 431
- Ointments, 118
- Oleate
in foundation makeups, 533
in skin cleansers, 497
- Olefin sulfonates
as anionic surfactant, 491
surfactants, 199
- Oleic acid
in emulsifier, 221
in permanent hair colors, 689
in semipermanent hair colors, 682
in shampoos, 623
- Oleth-3, in hair straighteners, 712
- Oleth-5, in skin care, 383
- Oleth-20
as emulsifier, 219
in hair setting/styling products, 640, 641, 643, 649, 654, 655, 664
in skin care, 375, 383
in skin cleansers, 497

- Oleyl alcohol
 comedogenicity of, 463
 in hair straighteners, 711
 in permanent hair colors, 689
 in shaving preparations, 513
 in skin cleansers, 499
- Olibanum resin, 315
- Olive oil, 306
 in hair setting/styling products, 642
 PEG-6 esters in surfactants, 205
 in skin care, 370, 383
- One-electron oxidation and antioxidants, 249
- Onychocytes in nails, 72–73
- Onychomycosis in nails, 76–77
- Opacifying agents in shampoos, 623
- Opaque emulsifiers and emulsions, 211, 212
- Operational/manufacturing considerations in new product developments, 115
- Optimization of formulas in, 124–125
- Oral care products (*See* Mouth, teeth, and oral care), 88, 143, 725–725
 denture cleansers, 743–745
 mouthwashes, 745–753
 solid dentifrice, 739
 testing dentifrices, 739–742
 toothbrushes and brushing, 742–743
 toothpowders, 738–739
- Oral malodor in oral care, 103–105
- Orange wax, 310
- Organic polymers in emulsions, 225
- Organic salts shampoo, 606, 623
- Organoclays in rheological additives, 243, 245
- Orientation of emulsification phases, 814–815
- Orthocortical cells in hair, 44, 48
- Osmotic pressure and microbial growth, 281
- Ostwald ripening of particles in emulsions, 230
- OTC Drug Review*, 145
- Outer root sheath (ORS) of hair, 39, 40
- Over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, 140–144, 393–394
 acne (*See* Acne products)
 active ingredients in, 402, 406
 analgesic preparations, external, 143
 antidandruff shampoos and lotions, 142, 408–412, 630
 antimicrobial products, 142, 144–145
 antiperspirant products, 142, 437, 449
 antiseptic hand washes, 405
 antiseptics for the skin, 403–407
 astringent products, 142, 412
 bleaches, skin bleaches, 394–398
 callus removers, 412–413
 categories of, 142–143
 cold sore treatments, 401–403
 corn removers, 412–413
 Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA), 145
 dandruff lotions (*See* Antidandruff shampoos and lotions)
 defining cosmetics vs. drugs, 140–142, 393–394
 European-American Phytomedicines Coalition (EAPC), 145
 fever blister treatments, 401–403
 inspections, 143
 international concerns and regulation of, 145–146
 International Conference on Harmonization (ICH), 145–146
 International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145
 labeling, 143
 lip balms, 401–403
 oral care products, 143
OTC Drug Review, 145
 patient preoperative skin antiseptics, 405, 406–407
 relationship of cosmetic products to drugs, 140–142, 393–394
 safety in, 144
 skin care products as, 393–413
 skin protectant products, 143, 401–403
 soaps, 398–401
 status of, 142–143
 sunscreens, 143, 145
 surgical hand scrub antiseptics, 405, 406–407
 U.S. regulation and, 140–144, 393–394
 wart removers, 412–413
 wrinkle removers, 141
- Oxidation, 898
 auto-oxidative dyes, 690–691
 bleaching of hair, 692–694, hair colorants/dyes, 682–690, 685–686, 686
 hair, 66–68
 lightening of hair, 692–694
 preservatives, 275
 reduction step in permanent waves, 696–698
 reoxidation step in permanent waves, 698–699
- Oxidation zone in hair, 41
- Oxidative degradation of emulsions, 231
- Oxidative hair coloring, 682–690, 686
- Oxidizing (bleaching) agents for hair, 67
- Oxalcohol in surfactants, 199, 203
- Oxybenzone, 422
 E.U. regulation of, 153
 in sunscreens, 417, 420
- Oxygen absorption by ocular tissues and eye, 84
- Oxygen reactions and antioxidants, 247
- Oxygen tension and microbial growth, 282
- Ozokerite, 309
 in hair setting/styling products, 652
 in lipsticks, 549
 in mascaras, 565, 566

- Ozone layer and UV radiation, 26
- PABA in sunscreens, 422, 425, 427
- Packaging, 875–888
- aerosols, 334–336, **335**
 - aluminum tubes, 881
 - aminoplastic packaging, 880
 - atmos dispensing system, 346
 - bag-in-a-can spray systems, 345
 - “blooming” gels, 509–510
 - closures, 885–886
 - codispensing systems, 347
 - collapsible tubes, 881–882
 - compression molding, 881
 - as contamination source, 279
 - container size, 170
 - design, 876
 - development and design of, 876
 - dry spray dispensers, 346–347
 - EP spray system, 346
 - extrusion blow molding, 880
 - F-Z finger pump foamer system, 347
 - filling processes for, 836–846, 841, **842**
 - flexible packaging, 882–883
 - flexography printing for packaging, 884
 - glass technology, 883–884
 - injection blow molding, 881
 - injection molding, 880
 - laminated tubes, 882
 - Lechner spray system, 346
 - letterpress printing for packaging, 884
 - lithography printing for packaging, 884–885
 - mouthwashes, 751–752
 - Packaging Waste Directive in E.U., 162
 - paper and printing, 884
 - pencils, 567–568
 - permeation testing of, 887–888
 - phenolic packaging, 880
 - piston spray system, 346
 - plastic bottles, 878
 - plastic packaging, 877–883
 - plastic tubes, 881–882
 - polyamide packaging, 879
 - polycarbonate packaging, 879
 - polyester packaging, 879
 - polyethylene packaging, 878–879
 - polypropylene packaging, 879
 - polystyrene packaging, 879–880
 - polyvinyl chloride packaging, 880
 - preservatives, 274
 - printing, 884
 - product information package (PIP), 159–161
 - pump activated spray systems, 346–347
 - rotogravure printing for packaging, 885
 - sepro can spray systems, 345–346
 - skin care products, 358, 359
 - tamper-evident packaging and, 140
 - technical aspects of designs, 876–877
 - testing of, 886–888
 - thermoforming, 881
 - thermoplastic resins, 878
 - thermosetting resins, 880
 - U.S. regulation and, 132
 - valves for aerosols, 336–338, **337**
- Packaging Waste Directive of E.U., 162
- Packing parameters (P) in surfactants, 191
- Packs for skin care, 165
- Paddle mixers, 786, **786**
- Padimate O sunscreens, 417, 422
- Paint, facial, 131
- Palm kernel glycerides, in skin cleansers, 497
- Palm kernel oil, 310
- Palm kernelamide, in acne products, 464
- Palm oil, 310, 318
- in shaving preparations, 505
 - in skin care, 375
- Palmitic acid, in shaving preparations, 502, 509, 510
- Panthenol, 368, 472, 641
- Paper and printing, 884
- Papillary sublayer of skin, 3–4
- Paraben esters, as preservative, 295
- Paraben
- in foundation makeups, 535
 - as preservative, 289, 290, 295
 - in toothpastes, 734
- Paracortical cells in hair, **44**, 48
- Paraffin
- as emulsifier, 221
 - in lipsticks, 550
 - in moisturizers, 265
 - in shampoos, 615
 - in skin care, 373, 376
- Pareth-40, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Paronychia in nails, 77
- Particle sizes in emulsions, 213, 213 (*t*), 214, 853, **853**
- Partition coefficient and effectiveness of preservatives, 290–291
- Pascals to measure rheological additive, 236
- Pastes, 118
- Patch testing, 769–770
- performance data for surfactants, 207 (*t*)
 - for mildness in skin cleansers, 488–489
- Patchouli oil, 315
- Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), 177
- Patents, 175–183
- European Patent Convention (EPC), 177, 179–180
 - infringement issues, 180–183
 - Japanese Industrial Property Laws, 180
 - labeling, 181–182
 - North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 179
 - Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), 177
 - Trade-related Aspects of Intellec. Prop. Law (TRIPs), 177, 180
 - United States and, 177–178
 - what is patentable, 178–179
 - worldwide patent system, 177–178
- Pathologies of nails, 74–77

- Patient preoperative skin
antiseptics, 405, 406–407
- PCA
as hygroscopic agent, 267
as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267, 365
- Peanut oil, 310
- Pearl essence (guanine) in nail polishes, 581
- Pearlaceous materials, 838–839, 857
in blushers, 561
in eyeshadows, 570, 571
in conditioning shampoos, 628
in foundation makeups, 524, 526, 529, 538, 541
in hair setting/styling products, 641
in lipsticks, 543, 546, 547
in nail polishes, 581
in shaving preparations, 504, 510
- Peelable facial masks, 480, **481**
- PEG (*See* Polyethylene glycol)
- Pellicle of tooth, 91, 92–93
- Pemphigus, 17
- Pencils, 567–568
- Penetration of light into skin, 24
- Penetration of shampoos, 613–614
- Pentaerythrityl rosinatate, in mascaras, 565, 566
- Pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate, 385
- Pentaerythrityl tetraisostearate, in foundation makeups, 535
- Pentaerythrityl tetrastearate, in acne products, 465
- Pentamethyl-4-6-dinitroindane, 151
- Peppermint oil, 315, 746
- Peppermint water, 315
- Peptides, acylated peptides in surfactants, 197
- Peracids, in hair, 67
- Perborates, in hair, 67
- Performance of cosmetic products, 773–781
blood flow testing in, 776
capacitance testing in, 774–775
colorimetry testing in, 775
dermatologic assessment
questionnaires in, 780–781
elasticity testing in, 774
evaporimetry testing in, 775
image analysis in, *in vivo*, 777
impedance (conductance) testing in, 774
in vitro testing for, 773–776
in vivo testing for, 776–781
in-use studies and, 777–780
profilometry testing in, 773–774
regression analysis in, 777
sebum assessment testing in, 776
squamestry testing in, 774
thickness testing in, 775
- Perfluoropolymethylisopropeth phosphate, in eyeshadows, 570
- Perfumes (*See* Fragrance)
- Periodontal diseases, 99–101
- Periodontal ligament, **89**, 90
- Periodontitis, 99–101
- Permanent hair coloring, 670, 682–690
- Permanent wave neutralizers, 204
- Permanent wave products, 66, 131, 165, 695, 696–708
acid cold wave solution, 705
alkaline cold wave solution, 705
buffered cold wave solution, 705
chemical heating methods (heating packages), 701
choice of lotions in, 707
cold waving processes, 701–705
cross-linking in, 699
curler diameter choice for, 708
cysteine cold wave lotion, 706
dissociation constants for mercaptide waving agents, 703 (*t*)
disulfide bond in, 696–698
evaluation of, 707–708
formulas for, 700
formulations for, 704–705
fragrance, 705, 707
glyceryl thioglycolate (GMTG), 701
heat waving processes, 699–701
mercaptans in, 696–698, 703
neutralizer for, 704
neutralizing step in, 708
nonperoxide cold wave lotion, 706
penetration rate for, 708
perfuming of thioglycolate lotions, 705, 707
peroxide cold wave lotion, 706
processing time for, 707–708
reducing agents for cold waving process, 702–704
reduction step in, 696–698
regulation of, 135
reoxidation step in, 698–699
stop action cold wave lotion, 706
temperature variation in, 707
thioglycolic acid in, 697, 702–704
thiols in, 696–698
- Permanganate, in hair, 67
- Permeability of skin, 16–17, 22
- Permeation testing of packaging, 887–888
- Peroxide cold wave lotion, 706
- Peroxide value (POV) for antioxidants, 258
- Peroxides in antioxidants, 248, 250
- Personnel as source of contaminations, 279–280
- Petrolatum, 118, 357, 378, 385
as emulsifier, 221, 227
in hair setting/styling products, 652, 664
as lipid, 326–327,
in lipsticks, 549, 550
in mascaras, 565, 566
in masks, 478
in moisturizers, 264, 265
in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
in skin cleansers, 499
in skin care, 373, 374, 376, 377, 381, 384
in straighteners, 712

- Petrolatum (*cont.*)
transepidermal water loss (TEWL) and, 326–327
- pH and sorption/desorption characteristics of hair, 55–56, 66
- pH levels
acne products and, 464
critical pH, teeth/in tooth, 90, 92
effectiveness of preservatives, 289–290
emulsions, 280
facial masks, 472, 474 (*t*)
masks, 476
microbial growth, 281
microbial metabolism and growth, 274–276
shampoo, 609, 623
skin and skin care products, 356–357, 362
soap, 486
- Phagolysosomes, in skin, 15
- Pharmaceutical Affairs Law No. 145, Japanese cosmetic regulation, 163
- Phase inversion in cleansing products, 371
- Phase inversion temperature (PIT) in emulsions, 224–225, 228, 231
- Phenethyl alcohol, 286, 287
- Phenol, 292, 293
in over-the-counter remedies, 404
in skin cleansers, 495
- Phenol index HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Phenolic acids as antioxidants, 256
- Phenolic ammonium, preservative, 295
- Phenolic antioxidants, 251–253
- Phenolic packaging, 880
- Phenolics, 737
in mouthwashes, 747
as preservative, 290
in skin care products, 362
- Phenoxyethanol
in foundation makeups, 535
in hair setting/styling products, 649
as preservative, 286, 287, 289, 295
in shaving preparations, 508
- m*-Phenylenediamines, in permanent hair colors, 684
- p*-Phenylenediamines, in permanent hair color, 683, 685, 689
- Phenyl mercuric acetate, 286, 287
- Phenyl salicylate, in mouthwashes, 747
- Phenyl trimethicone
in foundation makeups, 537
in hair setting/styling products, 652, 660, 661, 664
- Phenylalanine in hair, 68
- Pheomelanins of melanin in skin, 10–11
- Phosphates
in saliva, 91
in skin cleansers, 493
- Phosphated perfluoro, in foundation makeups, 530
- Phosphines, in hair, 63
- Phospholipids
antioxidants, 257
microbial growth in, 280
in surfactants, 200
- Phosphoric acid, 706
in hair straighteners, 713
in surfactants, 200, 206
- Phosphorus, in dental calculus (tartar), 94
- Phosphorylation vs. preservatives, 275
- Photo-oxidation and antioxidants, 250
- Photosensitization of products, U.S. regulation and, 130
- Photoaging skin, 22, 28, 33–34, 33, 34, 263
- Photoallergic responses, 28
of ocular tissues and eyes, 85
photoallergic dermatitis, 760–761
- Photocarcinogenesis, 26, 32–33
- Photodamage, 28
- Photodermatoses, 28, 35
- Photopatch testing, 770–771
- Photosensitivity, 28, 35
- Photostability testing of sunscreens, 426
- Phototoxic dermatitis, 760–761
- Phthalic acid
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
in nail polishes, 577
in shampoos, 627
- Phthalic anhydride, in nail polishes, 577
- Phycocyanobilin, 319
- Phytates as antioxidants, 249
- Phytosterols, 309
- Pigmentary system of skin, 10–11, 29–31
- Pili arrector muscles of skin, 19, 43
- PIP, 159–161
- Piston spray system, 346
- Pitting of nails, 76
- pK values and thiol production in hair, 66
- Placenta extract, 135, 397
- Plant seed-derived oils as lipid, 323
- Plant-derived antioxidants in antioxidants, 253
- Plant-derived raw materials, 308–310
- Plantain, 320
- Plaque on teeth, 93–98
- Plastic behavior in rheological additives, 236, 237
- Plastic bottles, 878
- Plastic fingernails, 598
- Plastic packaging, 877–883
- Plasticizers
in hair setting/styling products, 639
in nail polishes, 576–577
- Platelet-derived growth factor, 15
- “Play time” of after-shave balms, 517–520
- Poison center notification in labeling, 161
- Polarization in hair, 62
- Polarized light microscopic examination of emulsions, 217
- Polawax hair straighteners, 712
- Poloxamer, 407, 731, 750, 751
in mouthwashes, 747

- in shampoos, 608
- in skin cleansers, 494
- in surfactants, 207
- Polyacrylamide, in hair setting/styling products, 644
- Polyacrylate copolymer, in foundation makeups, 529
- Polyacrylic acid, in shaving preparations, 505
- Polyalkoxylated ether glycolates, in shampoos, 606
- Polyamide packaging, 879
- Polyamino sugar condensate, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Polycarbonate packaging, 879
- Polyester packaging, 879
- Polyesters, in nail polishes, 577, 582
- Polyethoxylated alcohol, in shampoos, 623
- Polyethoxylated materials in surfactants, 202–203, 202
- Polyethylene beads, in masks, 478
- Polyethylene
 - in acne products, 464
 - in eyeshadows, 571
 - in foundation makeups, 529, 538, 540
 - in moisturizers, 265
 - in packaging, 878–879
 - in skin cleansers, 499
 - in skin care, 373
- Polyethylene glycol (PEG)
 - as humectant, 363
 - in lipsticks, 550
 - in mascaras, 565, 566
 - microbial growth in, 281
 - PEG-4, 219, 629
 - PEG-6, 384, 498
 - PEG-8, 219, 516, 640, 682
 - PEG-9, 499
 - PEG-10, 385, 267
 - PEG-15 stearamonium chloride, 630
 - PEG-20 glyceryl stearate, 227, 228, 652
 - PEG-24, 712
 - PEG-25, 712
 - PEG-30 laurate, 500
 - PEG-32, 737
 - PEG-40 stearate, 219, 640, 641, 664, 496
 - PEG-45, 497
 - PEG-55, 497, 629
 - PEG-100 stearate, 219, 510
 - PEG-120 methyl glucose dioleate, 623, 626
 - PEG-150 acne products, 465
 - PEG-400, 375
 - PEG-60, 385, 640, 641, 654, 664
 - PEG-75, 468, 641, 664, 712
 - PEG-80 sorbitan laurate, 608, 626
 - PEG-1500, 377, 380, 383
 - PEG-4000, 383
 - as preservative, 291, 293
 - as rheological additive, 243, 244–245
 - in toothpastes, 732
- Polyethylene packaging, 860–861
- Polyethylene terephthalate (PET) plastic for aerosols, 336
- Polyglyceryl methacrylate, 664
- Polyglyceryl esters, 205
- Polyglyceryl isostearates, 548
- Polyglyceryl-2 dioleate, 381
- Polyglyceryl-3 diisostearate
 - in emulsions, 229
 - in eyeshadows, 570, 571
 - in foundation makeups, 540
- Polyglyceryl-4 makeup, 537
- Polymeric ethers, 608
- Polymeric residue cleaning by shampoo, 617–619
- Polymerized vegetable oil, in lipsticks, 548
- Polymers, 118, 119
 - in emulsions, 222, 225, 226
 - in hair setting/styling products, 637, 638–639, 657, 658
 - as humectant, 363
 - in masks, 477
 - in nail polishes, 575, 582
 - for packaging (*see* Packaging)
 - as preservative, 294, 294 (*t*)
 - as rheological additive, 243, 245
 - in shaving preparations, 506
 - in skin care, 381
- Polymethoxy bicyclic oxazolidine, 286, 287
- Polymethylmethacrylate, 529, 541, 542
- Polymorphous light eruption, 35
- Polyols
 - in hair setting/styling products, 639
 - humectants as, 363, 365
- Polyorganosiloxane, in shaving preparations, 505
- Polyoxyethylene ethers, 220
- Polyoxyethylene derivatives in emulsions, 232
- Polyoxyethylene esters in emulsions, 220
- Polyoxyethylene octyl, 292
- Polyoxyethylene sorbitan monolaurate, in skin care, 374
- Polyphosphates, 624
- Polyphosphoric acid in surfactants, 200
- Polypropylene packaging, 879
- Polyquaternium-2
 - in hair straighteners, 712
- Polyquaternium-4
 - in hair setting/styling products, 645
- Polyquaternium-6
 - in shampoos, 618
- Polyquaternium-7
 - in acne products, 464
 - in shaving preparations, 506
 - in skin cleansers, 497
 - in shampoos, 618, 628
- Polyquaternium-10
 - in dandruff products, 410
 - in shampoos, 618, 628, 629
 - in shaving preparations, 506, 507
 - in skin cleansers, 498, 499
- Polyquaternium-11
 - in hair setting/styling products, 638, 645, 647
 - in nail strengtheners, 595
 - in shampoos, 618
- Polyquaternium-16
 - in skin cleansers, 496
 - in shampoos, 618
- Polyquaternium-22, 706
- Polyquaternium-24
 - in shaving preparations, 506

- Polyquaternium-28
in hair setting/styling products, 643, 646
- Polyquaternium-30
in dandruff products, 410
- Polyquaternium-39
in shaving preparations, 506
- Polysaccharides, microbial
growth in, 281
- Polysorbate 20
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 645, 646
in hair straighteners, 712
in shampoos, 608
- Polysorbate 21, 219
- Polysorbate 40, 219
- Polysorbate 60, 372, 373, 374, 383
- Polysorbate 61, 219
- Polysorbate 65, 219
- Polysorbate 80
as emulsifier, 219
in foundation makeups, 533, 534
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 645
in mouthwashes, 750
as preservative, 291
in shaving preparations, 504
in skin care, 376
- Polysorbates
in emulsions, 232
in mouthwashes, 748
- Polystyrene packaging, 879–880
- Polyunsaturated fatty acids, 329
- Polyurethane
in eyeliners, 569
in foundation makeups, 529, 542
- Polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) in masks, 480
- Polyvinyl chloride packaging, 880
- Polyvinyl methyl ether, 619
- Polyvinylidene copolymer, 529, 542
- Polyvinylpyrrolidone, 481, 619
- Pomadés, 636, 651–652, 664
- Porphyrias, 35
- Porphyrins
antioxidants and, 250
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 24
- Porphyromonas gingivalis* as agent of periodontitis, 101
- Portable mixers, 806, **806**
- Postfoaming gel/mousse, 653–655, 656
- Postfoaming shave gels, 509–510
- Postpartum alopecia, 43, 44
- Posterior chamber of eyes, **80**
- Potassium
in nail strengtheners, 594
as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
in saliva, 91
in shampoos, 606
- Potassium acesulfame
in mouthwashes, 747
in toothpastes, 734
- Potassium alum, in nail strengtheners, 594
- Potassium bromates, in permanent waves, 704
- Potassium carbonate, in permanent waves, 700
- Potassium cetyl phosphate
in eyeliners, 569
in foundation makeups, 534
- Potassium hydroxide
in cuticle removers, 589, 591
in depilatories, 721
in foundation makeups, 534
in shaving preparations, 505
in skin care, 373, 375, 379, 380
- Potassium oleate, 219
- Potassium salts, in shaving preparations, 510
- Potassium sorbate in toothpastes, 734
- Potassium stearate, 505
- Potassium sulfate, 700
- Potassium sulfite, 700
- Pourable sculpting gel, 646
- Povidone-iodine, in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Powder foundations, 538–541
- Powders, 120, 131
after-shave powders, 520
bulk storage of, 871
deagglomeration of, 827
dry continuous processing, 870–873
filling, 861
hopper flow, 871–872, **872**
mixing, 860–861
particle size, 852–853 (*t*)
preelectric shave powder, 514, 515
pressed, 861
scale-up for powders, 863–865
suspension, 835
- Power consumption of mixers, 806
- PPG-3 myristyl ether, 456
- PPG-12, 640
- PPG-14 butyl ether, 452
- Pratol, 319
- Preblended ingredients in new product developments, 116
- Prebrushing rinse type mouthwashes, 745
- Precipitation of pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- Precorneal tear layer in ocular tissues and eyes, 79–80
- Preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
- Preelectric shave powder, 514, 515
- Preelectric shave talc stick or powder, 514
- Preformed polyethylene glycol (PEG) in surfactants, 206
- Pregnenolone acetate, 135
- Prenatal development of nails, 72
- Prenatal lanugo hair, 41
- Preservatives, 273–304, 378, 385
acceptance criteria for, 298
advantages and disadvantages of classes of, 287 (*t*)
antimicrobials as, 273
bacterial growth vs., 274–276, 284
botanicals as sources of, 307, 312
British Pharmacopoeia (BP) testing of, 297, 298
cationic surfactants and, 292
chemical modification of, 278
Cladosporium resinae contamination and, 276

- clinical significance of contaminations and, 283–285
concentration vs. effectiveness of, 288–289
Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA) testing of, 297, 298
critical micelle concentration (CMC) and, 292
deamination vs., 275
decarboxylation vs., 275
dehydration vs., 275
dephosphorylation vs., 275
dissociation and effectiveness of, 289–290
effectiveness of, 288–295
efficacy testing of, 297–298
in emulsions, 231
environment as source of contaminations, 277–278
equipment as source of contaminations, 278–279
E.U. regulation of, 151, 152, 295, 296, 299, 303
European Pharmacopoeia (EP) testing of, 297, 298
eye infection and, 284
in eye makeup products, 569–571, 555–556
flesh-eating bacteria and, 285
in foundation makeups, 535, 536
fungal growth vs., 274–276, 284
global preservative systems, 298
good manufacturing practices (GMP) and, 274, 302
in hair colorants/dyes, 688–689
hydrolysis vs., 275
hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) and, 292
interactions between ingredients and, 291–295
International Council on Harmonization (ICH) and, 303
irritation from, 301
Japanese regulation of, 169, 295, 296, 299
- Klebsiella* contamination and, 283
list of commonly used preservatives, 285, 286 (*t*)
microbial contamination and, 273
microbial limits in finished products, 302–303
microbial metabolism and growth vs., 274–276
microbial resistance to, 276
microorganisms isolated from cosmetic preparations, 284 (*t*)
microorganisms most frequently found in contaminated products, 283, 283 (*t*)
microorganisms used in tests of, 297–298
molds, 284
nonionic surfactants and, 292
nutrients for microbial growth, in products, 280–281
ocular preparations and, 284
oil to water ratio and effectiveness of preservatives, 290–291
osmotic pressure and microbial growth, 281
oxidation vs., 275
oxygen tension and microbial growth, 282
packaging and, 274, 279
partition coefficient and effectiveness of, 290–291
personnel as source of contaminations, 279–280
pH levels and effectiveness of, 281, 289–290
phosphorylation vs., 275
polymers and, 294 (*t*)
preservative-free products, 299
preservation of products during use, 298–301
Pseudomonas contamination and, 276, 280, 281, 283, 285, 301
ratio of total to free preservatives with surfactants, 294 (*t*)
- raw materials as source of contaminations and, 276–277
rechallenge testing of, 298
reduction vs., 275
regulation of, 136–137, 295
requirements of, 285–288
safety of, 300–301
selection criteria for, 295–297
self-preserving products, 299–300
setting/styling products, 640–641
in shampoos, 624
in shaving preparations, 508
shelf life of products and, 273–274
in skin care, 371, 373, 374, 375, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383
soaps and, 292
solid particles influence on, 294–295
sources of contaminations and, 276–280
sterilization procedures as, 278–279
surface tension and microbial growth, 282
surface-active agents and, 292
surfactants and, 292, 294 (*t*)
susceptibility of organism and effectiveness of, 291
temperature and microbial growth, 282
in temporary hair coloring, 675
testing for contamination in, 279
in toothpastes, 727, 734
toxic shock syndrome (TSS) and, 285
toxicity of, 300–301
United States Pharmacopoeia (USP) testing of, 297, 298
water activity and microbial growth, 277, 280, 281
yeast growth vs., 274–276, 284
- Preshave lotions, 131
Pressed powder, 861–863
blusher, 560–562
foundations, 538–541

- Pressure filling of aerosols, 344
Prevotella intermedia as agent of gingivitis, 100
Primary (baby) teeth, 87–88
Printing, 884
Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC), ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 31
Pro-vitamins in shampoos, 601–602
Product development, 111–128
 aerosols, 120–121
 “blue sky” approach to, 112
 capsules, 120
 competition assessment in, 113
 compounding rules for, 123–124
 computers and optimization of formulas, 125
 cost of products, 115
 creams, 117
 defining the product, 113, 121–122
 empirical approach to compounding, 123–124
 flexibility of developments, 113–114
 foams, 120
 forms of products, 116–121
 functionality of products, 114
 future of, 125–126
 gels, 119
 “grocery list” research method, 112–113
 ingredient selection, 122–123
 ingredient sourcing, 122–123
 knock-out experiments, 124–125
 lotions, 118
 manufacturability of products, 115
 marketability of products, 113, 114
 nonaerosol sprays, 120–121
 objectives of, 111–114
 ointments, 118
 operational/manufacturing considerations, 115
 optimization of formulas, 124–125
 pastes, 118
 philosophy of, 111–114
 planning for, 113
 powders, 120
 preblended ingredients, 116
 process of, 121–126
 regulatory requirements of products, 115, 129–173
 requirements of successful formulas, 114–116
 research methods, 112–114
 “restaurant” research method, 112–113
 safety of products, 114–115
 solutions, liquids in, 116
 stability of formulas used in, 114
 sticks, 119–120
 suspensions, 118–119
 tablets, 120
 test batches for, 125
 written product profiles, 122, 126–127
Product information package (PIP), 159–161
Production design considerations, 869–870
Products of specific concerns in U.S. regulations, 134–135
Profilometry testing, 773–774
Progesterone, 135
Prohibited and hazardous substances in U.S. regulation, 134
Proline in hair, 68
Propane propellant for aerosols, 339, 654, 660, 661, 662
Propanediol, as auxiliary preservative, 294
Propellants
 for aerosol products, 339–343, 507
 in hair setting/styling products, 638, 653
 in hair sprays, 658–663
Propoxylate polysiloxanes in surfactants, 207
Propoxylated lipids, 639
Propyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
Propyl gallate, in lipsticks, 551
Propylene carbonate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451
Propylene glycol, 378
 in acne products, 465, 466, 467
 in after-shave products, 518
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 453, 454, 456
 in cuticle removers, 589
 in dandruff products, 410
 in foundation makeups, 533, 536
 in hair setting/styling products, 639, 640, 643–646, 649, 655
 in hair straighteners, 712
 as humectant, 269
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
 in masks, 477, 480, 481
 in mouthwashes, 747
 in nail strengtheners, 594
 in permanent hair colors, 689
 as preservative, 291
 in shampoos, 623
 in shaving preparations, 503, 506, 509
 in skin cleansers, 497
 in skin care, 373, 376, 380, 381, 382
 in temporary hair coloring, 675
 in toothpastes, 732
Propylene glycol
 dicaprylate/dicaprate, in foundation makeups, 533–535, 542
Propylene glycol laurate, as emulsifier, 219
Propylene glycol stearate as emulsifier, 219
 in shaving preparations, 510
Propylene oxide, in shampoos, 608
Propylparaben
 in eyeliners, 569
 in eyeshadows, 570, 571
 in foundation makeups, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541
 in mascaras, 565, 566
 as preservative, 286, 287, 295
 in shampoos, 624, 629
 in temporary hair coloring, 675

- Protease digestion and desquamation in skin, 386, **387**
- Proteins
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94
 in hair setting/styling products, 641
 in hair, 40–48, 44, 55, 61, 62, 68, 69
 microbial growth in, 280
 in nail polishes, 582
 in saliva, 91
 in skin, 3, 9, 14–15, 17, 23
- Proteoglycans in skin, 34, 82
- Proteolytic enzymes, in skin, 15
- Protocatechuic acid as antioxidant, 256
- Protofilaments in hair, 47–48
- Proximal nail fold, 71, 72, 73
- Pryogenic silica in acne products, 464
- Pseudo-plastic behavior in rheological additives, 237, **237**, 795
- Pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- Pseudomonas*
 contamination by, 280–285, 301
 infection of nails, 75, 77
 preservatives, 276
 as test of preservative efficacy, 297
- Psoralens, photosensitivity and, 35
- Psoriasis and nails, 75–77
- Puberty and hair, 41, 42–43
- Pulp of tooth, 89, **89**
- Pumice, in skin cleansers, 498
- Pump-activated spray systems, 346–347, 659
 antiperspirants and deodorants, 450–451
 sunscreens, 431
- Pumping capacity, 807, **808**
- Purpurin, 317
- PVM, 644, 647, 649, 659, 661, 664
- PVM/MA decadiene crosspolymer, 226
- PVP
 in eyeliners, 569
 in hair setting/styling products, 638, 640, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 649, 650, 652, 654, 655–658, 664, 665
 PVP/decene copolymer, 226
 PVP/VA copolymers, 638
- Pyridine, in permanent hair colors, 683
- Pyridoxin, 368
- Pyrimidine, in permanent hair colors, 683
- Pyrocatechol, 397
- Pyrrolidine sulfate, in permanent hair colors, 690
- Pyrrolidone carboxylic acid, 203, 365
- Quality, E.U. regulation of, 150
- Quasi-drugs defined by Japanese regulation of, 164–165
- Quaternaries
 in nail polishes, 582
 in surfactants, 201–202, 493–494
- Quaternary ammonium
 in after-shave products, 518
 in cuticle softeners, 591
 as preservative, 290, 293, 295, 301
 removal by shampoo, 616–617
 in shaving preparations, 506
- Quaternary carboxylates, 608
- Quaternary polymers, 622
- Quaternary salts, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Quaternium-15
 in nail strengtheners, 595
 as preservative, 286, 287
 in shampoos, 624
- Quaternium-18 hectorite
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 454
 rheological properties of, 245
 in skin care, 371, 381
- Quaternium-19
 in skin care, 382
- Quaternium-22, 640
- Quaternium-26, 640, 643
- Quaternium-52, 640, 644, 654
- Quercetin as antioxidant, 255
- Questionnaires, dermatologic assessment and, 780–781
- Quince extract, 383
- Quince seed gum, 226
- Race-related cutaneous differences in skin sensitivity, 764, 765
- Racial factors in U.S. cosmetic regulation, 129
- Radial flow, 802, **803**
- Reactive oxygen species (ROS) actions in antioxidants, 250–251, 258
- Reactors for cosmetic industry, 799–800
 continuous stirred tank reactor (CSTR), 799, 850
- Recession of gums, 101
- Rechallenge testing of preservatives, 298
- Reducing agent for cold waving process, 702–704
- Reduction step in permanent waves, 696–698
- Reduction vs. preservatives, 275
- Reflectivity of materials in foundation makeups, 524–525
- Registration of cosmetic products, Japanese regulation of, 170–171
- Registration of manufacturers, E.U. regulation of, 161
- Regression analysis, 777
- Regulatory requirements (*See* European Union regulation of cosmetics; Japanese regulation of cosmetics; United States regulation of cosmetics)
- Regulatory requirements for products, 115
- Relationship of PIT to HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Relaxers, hair, 710–711
- Remineralization of tooth, 99, 742
- Removers of hair colors, 692
- Reoxidation step in permanent waves, 698–699
- Repeat insult patch test (RIPT), 771

- Requirements of successful formula in new product developments, 114–116
- Research methods in new product developments, 112–114
- Reseda, 319
- Resin-strip type facial masks, 472
- Resins
in hair setting/styling products, 638–639
in nail polishes, 577
- Resistance, microbial, to preservatives, 276
- Resorcinol, 397
in acne products, 466
in permanent hair colors, 684, 689, 690
- Resorcinol-sulfur lotion acne products, 466
- Resorcylic acid as antioxidant, 256
- Resorption zone in hair, 40
- “Restaurant” research method in new product developments, 112–113
- Restricted substances, E.U. regulation, 151
- Rete ridges, 4
- Reticular sublayer in skin, 4
- Reticulum, 18
- Retinoic acid
in skin care, 15, 379
reversing photoaging of skin with, 34
- Retinol nail strengthener, 595
- Reynolds number, 792–793
- Rheological additives, 235–246, 235
acrylic acid in, 245
agitation and, 241–242
Al/Mg hydroxide stearate in, 243
alcohols as, 235
aluminum magnesium hydroxide stearate in, 245–246
anhydrous systems of, 243
categories of, 243
cellulose in, 244
cellulosics in, 243
clays as, 235, 240, 243, 244
colloid mills in, 241
copolymers in, 245
dilatant in, 237, 237
dispersers in, 241
elastic properties in, 238
emulsions in, 240
encapsulated active ingredients in, 240
fatty acids as, 235
flow properties and, 235
glycols as, 235
gums as, 235, 243, 244
homogenizers in, 241
instrumentation for measurement of, 238–239
laboratory effects of, 239–241
lubricity and, 235
manufacturing and, 241–242
mineral oil, 236
mixing and, 791
mixing machinery and effect on, 240–242
Newton/meters to measure, 236
Newtonian fluids in, 236, 237, 793, 794, 795
non-Newtonian fluids in, 236, 794
organoclays in, 243, 245
Pascals to measure, 236
plastic behavior in, 236, 237
polyethylenes in, 242, 243, 245
polyethylene glycols (PEGs) in, 243, 244–245
polymers in, 243, 245
product settling and, 239
pseudoplastic behavior in, 237, 237
rheology definition of, 235
salts as, 235, 245
selection criteria for, 246
shear rate in, 236–241
shear stress in, 236, 240
shear thinning effect in, 237–238, 237
shelf life and, 235
silicas as, 235, 243, 246
silicon dioxide, 246
slip and, 235
stability and, 242–243, 892–893
stability enhancement through, 235, 240
surfactants as, 235
suspension of ingredients and, 235, 240
temperature effects on, 241
testing of, 242–243
thermal stability and, 235
thickeners and, 235
thixotropic materials in, 237–238, 237, 242–243
trihydroxystearin in, 243, 245
visco-elastic properties in, 238
viscosity and, 235–239
viscosity chart, common substances, 236 (*t*)
water, 236
water-based systems of, 243, 244
waxes as, 235, 241, 242
yield values in, 236
- Rheometry, use of, 217
- Rhodamines in nail polishes, 573
- Rice starch, 120
as contamination source, 277
- Rice wax, 310
- Ridging (onychorrhexis) of nails, 75
- Right-handed helix in hair, 44
- Ring gel, 119, 430, 651
- Rinses, dental, 98, 104, 105, 131
- Rising or creaming in emulsions, 218, 225
- Rodenticides, 165
- Roll-back mechanism in shampoos, 611–612, 612
- Roll-on type antiperspirants and deodorants, 453–454
- Root of tooth, 89, 89
- Rose oil, 315
- Rose water, 315
- Rosemary oil, 315, 551
- Rosewood oil, 315
- Rosin mascaras, 565, 566
- Rosmarinic acid as antioxidant, 252, 253, 312
- Rotogravure printing for packaging, 885
- Roto/stator design, 821
- Rouge (*See* Blushers and rouge)
- S-S scission in hair, 67, 68

- Saccharide hydrolysate, as
hygroscopic agent, 267
- Saccharide isomerate, as
hygroscopic agent, 267
- Saccharides in surfactants,
205–206
- Saccharin
in mouthwashes, 747, 750
in toothpastes, 734, 737
- Sachets, 131
- Safety of cosmetic products,
755–773
adverse skin reactions in,
755–766
age-related cutaneous
differences in skin
sensitivity and, 764
allergic contact dermatitis in,
758–759
animal testing in, 768–769
antiperspirants and
deodorants, 441
approach to formulation of
skin products meeting,
765 (*t*)
assessment methods for,
766–773
contact urticaria (hives) in,
759–770
cumulative irritancy test in,
771
cutaneous reaction patterns
and, 756 (*t*)
Draize test in, 768
emulsions, 223, 231–232
E.U. regulation of, 150,
155–156, 161
eye irritancy testing in,
768–769, 771
guinea pig maximization
testing in, 769
hair colorants/dyes, 670–671
human testing procedures in,
769–773
human variability in skin
sensitivity and, 763–765
in vitro testing in, 767–768
irritant contact dermatitis and,
756–758, 757 (*t*)
mandatory requirement of
safety in, 765–766
mechanisms of skin sensitivity
and, 761–763
mouthwashes, 752
nail polish, 574
new product development,
114–115
noxious sensory stimuli
testing in, 772
OTC drugs, 144
patch testing in, 769–770
photopatch testing in,
770–771
phototoxic dermatitis in,
760–761
polish, 578
preservatives, 300–301
race-related cutaneous
differences in skin
sensitivity and, 764, 765
repeat insult patch tests
(RIPT) in, 771
shampoo, 633
soap chamber test in, 771
sting testing in, 772–773
stinging and, products that
induce, 762 (*t*)
sunscreens, 427
surfactant use, 208–209
toothpastes, 740
U.S. regulation and, 129, 130,
134
- Safflower, 318
- Saffron, 318
- Sage oil, 315, 320
- Sale of cosmetics in E.U.,
147–148
- Salicylic acid
in acne products, 466
in dandruff products, 408,
409, 411
in foundation makeups, 536
as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Saliva and oral care, 89, 93, 97,
98
- Salts as rheological additive,
235, 245
- Sandalwood, 315, 319
- Sanguinaria extract, 737, 748
- Sanitary products, 165
- Santalol, 319
- Sarcosinates in surfactants, 197
- Scale-up, 846–852
for continuous systems, 869
for powders, 863–865
- Scientific Committee for
Cosmetic and Non-Food
Products (SCCNFP),
151–156
- Scrubbing cleanser, 498, 471,
476 (*t*)
- Sculpting lotions, 643–646
- Sebaceous gland and hair, **4, 8**,
12–13, **40**, 48, 80, 438
acne and, 460
- Sebocytes in skin, **4**
- Sebum assessment testing, 776
- Sebum of skin, 13, 460,
614–616
- Secondary (adult) teeth, 88
- Secret ingredients, U.S.
regulation of, 139
- Segregation of particles, 790
- Segregative mixing, 788
- Selenium sulfide, in dandruff
products, 408, 409, 411
- Self-heating hair straightener,
713
- Self-preserving products,
299–300
- Semipermanent hair coloring,
670, 676–682
- Sensitive teeth, 101–102, 736
- Sepero can spray systems,
345–346
- Sequestrants in shampoos,
623–624
- Sericide
in blushers, 561
in foundation makeups, 528,
540, 542
- Sesame oil, 371
- Setting lotion, 643
- Settling in rheological additives,
239
- SH-group in stress relaxation
hair, 55–56
- Shampoos, 131, 165, 195,
601–634
acyl isethionates, 605
additives to, 601–602
alkyl ether sulfates in,
602–604
alkyl sulfates in, 602–604
alkyl-substituted amino acids
in, 609
alpha-olefin sulfonates (AOS)
in, 604

- Shampoos (*cont.*)
- amine oxides, 607
 - amphoteric surfactants in, 608–609
 - anionic surfactants in, 602–606
 - antidandruff shampoos, 630
 - antioxidants in, 623–624
 - baby (tearless) shampoos, 608, 625, 626
 - benefits of, 624–625
 - betaines in, 608–609
 - body of hair, 632
 - cationic conditioning polymers and, 618
 - cationic surfactants in, 609
 - for chemically treated hair, 617, 621–622
 - clarifying agents in, 623
 - cleaning (basic) shampoo formula, 625
 - combing damage to hair after, **621**
 - combing ease after, 631
 - conditioners for, 601–602, 606, 616–618, 626–630, conditioning shampoos, 626–630
 - critical micelle concentration (CMC) in, 603, 612–613
 - cuticle erosion by, 620
 - dimethicone residue cleaning by, 619
 - direct damage by, 620
 - ease of applications of, 630
 - effects on hair by, 620–622
 - efficacy of soil removals by, 614–620
 - emulsification formation in, 613–614
 - emulsions in, 602
 - evaluation of, 630–633
 - fatty alkanolamides in, 606–607
 - fatty glyceryl ether sulfonates, 606
 - fixative residue cleaning by, 619
 - foaming (lather) characteristics, 601, 603, 613–614, 630–631
 - fragrance in, 624
 - herbal extracts in, 601–602
 - indirect damage by, 620
 - irritation from, 601
 - lather (*See* Foaming characteristics)
 - linear alkylbenzene sulfonates (LAS), 605
 - luster of hair, 631, 632
 - manageability of hair and, 632
 - marine extracts in, 602
 - mechanisms of hair cleaning, 609–614, **612**
 - mesophase formation in, 613–614
 - miceller activity in, 603
 - mild (baby) shampoos, 625, 626
 - mixed soil cleaning by, 619–620
 - monoglyceride sulfate, 606
 - N-acyl methyltaurates (AMT), 605
 - N-acyl sarcosinates, 605
 - negative charges of hair and cleaning with, 609–610
 - nonsilicone conditioning agents for, 628–630
 - nonionic surfactants in, 606–608
 - oily soil removal by, 611–614
 - opacifying agents in, 623
 - pearlescent conditioning shampoo, 628
 - penetration of, 613–614
 - pH of, 609, 623
 - polyalkoxylated ether glycolates, 606
 - polymeric residue cleaning by, 617–619
 - preservatives in, 624
 - pro-vitamins in, 601–602
 - quaternary ammonium compound cleaning by, 616–617
 - reduced-damage shampoo, 622, 622 (*t*)
 - rheological properties of, 236, 244
 - rinsing characteristics, 601, 631
 - roll-back mechanism in, 611–612, **612**
 - safety, 633
 - sebum cleaning by, 614–616
 - sequestrants in, 623–624
 - shine of hair, 631, 632
 - silicone conditions for two-in-one shampoos, 626–628
 - soaps in, 602
 - sodium lauryl sulphate (SLS), 616
 - sodium lauryl-2 sulfate (SLES), 616
 - softness of hair and, 631
 - solid particulate cleaning by, 610–611
 - solubilization of soils by, 612–613
 - split ends and, **621**
 - stability of, 632–633
 - static reducing shampoo, 629
 - sulfosuccinates in, 605
 - surfactants in, 602–609
 - thickeners for, 623
 - two-in-one (shampoo/conditioner) products, 601, 602, 626–628
 - UV absorbers in, 623–624
 - van der Waals forces in, 617
 - viscosity of, 601, 609, 622–623
 - vitamins in, 601–602
- Shaping spray, 653
- Shark liver oil, in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
- Shaving creams, 120, 131, 165, 502–504
- Shaving foams, 505–509
- Shaving gels, 119
- Shaving preparations, 120, 131, 165, 501–521
- aeorsol shaving foams, 505–509
 - after-shave balms, 517–520
 - after-shave gels, 517
 - after-shave lotion, 515–516
 - after-shave powders, 520
 - alcohol in after-shaves, 515–516
 - alkali content in, 503
 - antioxidants in, 507
 - beard softening characteristics in, 501–502
 - “blooming” gels, 509–510

- brushless shave creams, 510–511
- colorants in after-shaves, 516
- conditioning agents in, 506–507, 511, 528
- corrosion inhibitors in aerosols, 508
- dry shaving preparations, 511–513
- electric shavers, preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
- emollients in, 503, 505
- emulsions in, 506, 510
- evaluation of aerosol foam shaves, 508–509
- facial depilatories for African-American men, 720
- fatty acids in, 502–503, 506, 510
- foaming characteristic of, 508
- foaming shave products, 502–504
- fragrance in, 507
- free fatty acid (FFA) content of, 503
- gums in, 505, 518
- humectants in, 503, 506, 511, 518
- internal can pressure for aerosols, 508
- lathering shaving cream, 502–504
- lathering shaving sticks, 504
- lipids in, 503–506, 509–511
- lubricant characteristics of, 501–502, 506–507
- moisturizers in, 504
- oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 505
- oils in, 503
- pearlizing agents in, 504, 510
- play time of after-shave balms, 517–520
- postfoaming shave gels, 509–510
- preelectric shave gel stick, 514
- preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
- preelectric shave powder, 514, 515
- preservatives in, 508
- propellants in aerosol, 507
- pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- rheological additives for, 244
- sensorial (cooling) products in, 504
- shaving cream, 502–504
- shaving sticks, 504
- soaps in, 505
- soothing agents in after-shaves, 516
- spray rates for aerosols, 508
- stability of, 502
- surfactants in, 503–504, 506, 511
- TEA soaps, 503
- thickeners in, 505, 514
- two-phase after-shave lotions, 516
- volatile organic compounds (VOC) in aerosols, 507, 510, 515
- Shaving soaps, 131
- Shaving sticks, 504
- Shea butter, 309, 664
- Shear rate, 236, 239, 241, **793**, 794, **795**
- Shear stress, 236, 240, 793
- Shear thinning effect in rheological additive, 237–238, **237**
- Shearing equipment, 857–859
- Shedding of nails (onychomadesis), 75
- Shelf life, 235, 273–274, 889, 890
- Shikonin, 319
- Shine enhancers, 636
- Shine of hair, 58–59
- Shower gel, 119, 497, 499
- Silica as additive, 246 in eyeshadows, 571 in foundation makeups, 529, 530, 540 in hair straighteners, 712 as rheological additive, 235, 243
- Silicates, 120
- Silicon dioxide, 246
- Silicone emulsion, 824
- Silicones, 119 in after-shave products, 517 in antiperspirants and deodorants, 450 as lipid, 323 in lipsticks, 550 in makeup, 535, 542 in mascaras, 565, 566 in setting/styling products, 639, 642, 648 in shampoos, 626–628 in shaving preparations, 505, 506
- Single-phase (miscible) systems, 801–802
- Singlet oxygen, photosensitivity and, 35, 249–250
- Sjögren's syndrome in oral care, 105
- Skin, 3–38 absorption of water by, 262 acne (*See* Acne products) actinic keratosis and, 33 action spectrum of light in skin, 24–25, **25** adverse reactions to cosmetics in, 755–766 age vs. dryness in, 262 age-related cutaneous differences in, 764 aging, chronologic, of, 20–22, 21 (*t*) allergic contact dermatitis in, 758–759 apocrine sweat glands in, 12, 18, 438–439 appendageal structures of, 11–13 aromatherapy and, 389 atrophy of, 33, 34 barrier function of, 9, 16–17, 351, 354–357, **355**, 367 basal cell carcinoma, 28 basal lamina in, 5 basal layer of epidermis in, 4 basement membrane in, 387, 388 blood flow testing in, 776 blood vessel of, 4, 17, 18, 19, 22, 352 burns to, 20 calcium in, 356 callus in, 20, 261 capacitance testing in, 774–775

- Skin (*cont.*)
- capillary in, 4
 - carcinomas, 28
 - cementosomes of (*See* Odland bodies)
 - ceramides in, 6, 9, 16
 - cholesterol in, 13, 16, 353
 - chromophores in, 23
 - chronologic aging of, 20–22, 21 (*t*), 263
 - coarseness of, 22, 33, 34
 - collagen in, 3, 15, 18, 22, 34, 387–388
 - collagenase in, 15
 - colorimetry testing in, 775
 - conductance of, after lipid application, 328, 328 (*t*)
 - connective tissue in, 4
 - contact urticaria (hives) in, 759–770
 - copper in collagen synthesis in, 18
 - cumulative irritancy test in, 771
 - cutaneous malignant melanoma and, 33
 - cutaneous reaction patterns and, 756 (*t*)
 - cytokeratins in, 7
 - cytokines in, 3, 10, 14–15, 357
 - damage to, 19–20
 - delipidization of, 353–354
 - dendritic pigment-synthesizing cells in, 4
 - dermal fibrils in, 5
 - dermal-epidermal interactions in, 387–388
 - dermis of, 3, 4, 17–19, 351
 - dermo-epidermal junction in, 4–5
 - desmosomes in, 5
 - desquamating layer of, 10
 - desquamation of, 10, 386, 387
 - dielectric water content (DEWC), 763
 - dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) in, 11
 - diseases of, 17, 35
 - Draize test in, 768
 - dry skin, 263–264, 270
 - eccrine sweat glands in, 11–12, 18, 438–439
 - efficacy testing of skin moisturizers, 269
 - elasticity testing in, 774
 - elastin in, 15, 18, 34
 - environmental factors in moisture content of, 268–269
 - enzymes in, 15, 386
 - epidermal rete ridges in, 4
 - epidermis in, 3–7, 4, 351, 352, 387
 - erythema in, 23, 25–29, 25
 - esterification in, 353
 - ET-1 receptors and tanning, 398
 - eumelanins of melanin in, 11
 - evaporimetry testing in, 775
 - fatty acids in, 16, 353
 - fibroblasts in, 17, 387, 388
 - fibronectin in, 34
 - filaggrin in, 8
 - freckles in, 33, 34
 - free fatty acids in, 6, 13
 - frostbite and, 20
 - functions of, 14–17, 389
 - functions of, decline with age, 21, 22 (*t*)
 - glycocalyx of, 5
 - glycolipids in, 353
 - glycoproteins in, 5
 - glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) in, 3, 17, 18, 22
 - granular cells in, 16
 - granular layer of epidermis in, 4
 - ground substance of, 3, 18
 - hair follicle in, 4, 13–14, 18, 39, 41, 352, 438
 - healing process and moisture in, 265–266
 - hormonal influences on, 388
 - horny layer (stratum corneum) of epidermis in, 4, 351
 - human variability in sensitivity of, 763–765
 - humectants and, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*), 363–367
 - hydration of, 352
 - hydrolysis in, 353
 - hydrolytic enzymes in, 16
 - hydrophilic polymers in skin moisturizers, 268
 - hygroscopic agents for skin moisturization and, 266, 267 (*t*)
 - hyperkeratotic lesions and, 33
 - immunosuppression and, 32
 - impedance (conductance) testing in, 774
 - insensible perspiration of (*See* Transepidermal water loss)
 - interleukin (IL) and tanning, 398
 - ionizing radiation damage and, 20
 - irritant contact dermatitis and, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
 - keratin in, 3–10 365
 - keratinizing system, 4–7
 - keratinocytes in, 3–10, 8, 14–15, 29–31, 262, 386
 - keratinosomes (Odland bodies) in, 5–6, 16, 324, 367
 - lamellar body secretion by, 268
 - lamina lucida in, 5
 - Langerhans cells in, 4, 11, 20, 357
 - laxity of, 22, 33, 34
 - layers of, 3–4, 4
 - lentigo maligna, 28
 - lipid penetration of, 326
 - lipids treatment of, 325–326, 354–356, 355, 364–365
 - lipids in, 3–16, 7 (*t*), 264, 268, 323–324, 351–352, 353–354, 460, 461
 - lipocytes in, 4
 - loricrin in, 9
 - lymphatic vessels of, 19, 352
 - lysosomes in, 15
 - malignancies of, 20, 28, 32–33
 - malpighian (prickle) layer of epidermis in, 4, 5
 - mast cells in, 15, 17
 - mechanisms of sensitivity in, 761–763
 - Meissner corpuscles in, 19
 - melanin in, 10, 29–31, 35–36
 - melanocytes in, 4, 10–11
 - melanomas and, 28, 33

- melanosomes in, 10–11, 29–31
- Merkel cells in, 4
- mesenchymal cells in, 387
- minimum erythema dose (MED) of, 26
- moisture content of, 9, 9, 16–17, 261–263, 351–352, 357–358, 365–366, **366**, 385–386
- moisturizers for, 261–270
- morphology of, 3–4, **4**
- mucocutaneous end organs in, 19
- muscles of, 19
- nails, 14
- natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 266–268, 358, 365, 385
- neomelanogenesis in, 25
- neoplasms in, 21, 22, 33, 34
- nerves in, 18–19
- neurocutaneous skin biology, 388–389
- nonmelanoma skin cancers (NMSC) and, 33
- noxious sensory stimuli testing in, 772
- nutritional effects on, 388
- occlusion of, 357
- occlusive agents in moisturizers for, 264–266, 265 (*t*)
- Ondland bodies in, 5–6, 16, 324, 367
- oils in, 367, 462–465
- oily skin (*See* Acne products)
- optical characteristics, 23
- papillary sublayer of, 3–4
- patch testing in, 769–770
- penetration of light into skin, 24
- penetration rate of, by skin care products, 353–354
- permeability of, 16–17, 22
- perspiration of (antiperspirants and deodorants), 438–441
- pH levels and, 356–357
- pheomelanins in, 10–11
- photoaging, 22, 28, 33–34, 263
- photoallergic dermatitis in, 760–761
- photocarcinogenesis and, 26, 32–33
- photodamage, 28
- photodermatoses and, 28, 35
- photopatch testing in, 770–771
- photosensitivity and, 28, 35
- phototoxic dermatitis in, 760–761
- pigmentary system of, 10–11, 29–31, 35–36
- pili arrector muscles of, 19
- plant extracts beneficial to, 319–320
- profilometry testing in, 773–774
- protease digestion and desquamation in, 386, **387**
- protective mechanisms in, 35–36, 35
- proteins in, 3, 9, 14–17, 23
- proteoglycans in, 34, 82
- pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- race-related cutaneous differences in, 764, 765
- repeat insult patch tests (RIPT) in, 771
- reticular sublayer in, 4
- reticulin in, 18
- reversal of photoaging to, 34
- sebaceous gland in, 4, 8, 12–13, 352, 438, 460
- sebocytes in, **4**
- sebum assessment testing in, 776
- sebum produced by, 13, 460, 614–616
- skin types, 31, 32
- soap chamber test in, 771
- sodium in, 356
- softening of, 366
- solar keratoses, 28
- solar lentiginos (age spots/liver spots) in, 22, 33, 34
- sphingolipids in, 353
- squalene in, 13
- squametry testing in, 774
- squamous cell carcinoma, 28
- sterols in, 6, 353
- sting testing in, 772–773
- stinging and, products that induce, 762 (*t*)
- stratum basale in, 5
- stratum corneum of, 6–7, 9, 19, 262, 323–324, 351, 352, 367
- stratum corneum disjunction/conjunction in, 10
- stratum germinativum of, **4**, 5–9, 262
- stratum lucidum in, 6
- stratum spinosum in, 5–6, 4
- structures and function, 3–38
- subcutaneous tissue of, 3, 4, 351
- subcutis or hypodermis layer of, 4
- sunburn and, 20, 23, 28–29
- sunlight and (*See* Ultraviolet radiation and)
- sunscreens and, 32
- sweat composition of, 438–439
- sweat gland in, **4**, 11–12, 352
- tanning in, 23, 29–31, 35–36, 397–398, 415
- telangiectasias of, 22, 33, 34
- temperature vs. moisture absorption by, 352–353
- terminal differentiation in, 7–10
- thermal burns, 30
- thickness testing in, 775
- topical or cutaneous drug absorption through, 17, 22, 352, 354, 368
- transepidermal water loss (TEWL), 262–264, 266, 268, 324, 325, 367, 374, 763, 775
- transglutaminase in, 9
- triglycerides in, 13
- types of, and genetic response to UV, 31–32
- ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 11, 12, 15, 20–36, 378
- urocanic acid in, 36
- UVB-induced pigmentation mechanism in, 397–398
- vasculature of, 19, 22
- Vater-Pacini corpuscles in, 19

- Skin (*cont.*)
- vitamin C in collagen
 - synthesis in, 18
 - vitamins and, 388
 - vitamins applied topically to, 368
 - water absorption by, 352
 - water level in, 9
 - water loss in, 9, 10, 16, 17, 261–263, 351–352
 - wax esters in, 13
 - wrinkles in, 21–22, 33, 34, 262, 377–379
- Skin antiseptics, 403–407
- Skin care products, 351–413
- acne products (*See* Acne products)
 - active ingredients in, 362, 402, 406
 - all-purpose creams, 360
 - amino acids in, 365
 - t*-4-aminomethyl-cyclohexanecarboxylic acid (*t*-AMCHA) in, 386
 - anhydrous oily types, 361
 - antidandruff shampoos and lotions, 408–412, 630
 - antimicrobials in, 362, 368
 - antioxidants in, 362
 - antiseptic hand washes, 405
 - antiseptics for the skin, 403–407
 - antiwrinkle creams, 377–379
 - aromatherapy and, 389
 - astringents, 142, 412, 465
 - barrier function of skin vs., 354–356, 355, 357, 367
 - bleaches, 394–398
 - body creams, 382
 - botanical extracts in, 368
 - buffers in, 362
 - calcium concentrations in, 356
 - callus removers, 412–413
 - categories of, by function, 359–360, 360 (*t*)
 - chelating agents in, 362, 375, 383
 - cleansers (*See* Skin cleansers)
 - cleansing creams, 360
 - cold creams, 360, 370
 - cold sore treatments, 401–403
 - colorants in, 362
 - components of, 361–363, 362 (*t*)
 - corn removers, 412–413
 - cream type products, 358–361
 - dandruff lotions (*See* Antidandruff shampoos and lotions)
 - delipidization in, 353–354
 - dermal-epidermal interactions in skin and, 387–388
 - emollient creams, 379–382
 - emulsions in, 358, 359
 - environmental factors in moisture content of skin, 363–364, 364, 365
 - enzymatic homeostasis theory in, 386
 - eye creams, 378
 - fatty acids in, 368–369
 - fever blister treatments, 401–403
 - formulation of, 361 (*t*)
 - foundation creams, 360
 - fragrance in, 362
 - functions, 14
 - future developments in, 384–385
 - hand and body protectants, 360
 - hand creams, 382
 - hormonal influences on skin and, 388
 - humectants/moisturizers in, 363–367
 - hydration of skin from use of, 352
 - ions and pH levels in, 356–357
 - irritation caused by, 366–367
 - lip balms, 401–403
 - lipids in, 310, 318, 354–356, 355, 362, 364–365, 370–372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 380, 381, 382, 384
 - lotions, 358, 359, 360
 - marketing of, 359
 - massage creams, 360, 374, 376
 - microemulsion lotion, 383
 - milks, 360
 - miscellaneous ingredients in, 368
 - moisture balance in, 357–358, 365–366, 366, 385–386
 - moisturizers in, 131, 188, 261–272, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*), 361–367, 383 (*t*), 364, 365, 372, 374, 379, 381, 383, 384
 - multiple emulsions, 382, 384, 385
 - natural moisturizing factor (NMF) and, 358, 365, 385
 - neurocutaneous skin biology in, 388–389
 - night creams, 360, 374, 376
 - nutritive creams, 376
 - occlusion of skin by, 357
 - oil phase components of, 362
 - oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions in, 361, 370, 371, 376, 380
 - oils in, 362, 367, 370, 371
 - over-the-counter drug type products, 393–413
 - packaging for, 358, 359
 - patient preoperative skin antiseptics, 405, 406–407
 - penetration rate by, 353–354
 - perfumes (*See* Fragrance), 362
 - pH levels in, 356–357, 362
 - phase inversion in cleansing products, 371
 - preservatives in, 362
 - raw materials in, 362
 - safety of, 765 (*t*)
 - skin cleansing products, 369–374
 - skin protectant products, 401–403
 - soaps, 398–401
 - sodium concentrations in, 356
 - softening lotions, 360, 366, 383
 - solubility of, 354
 - stability of, 359, 381–382
 - stabilizers in, 362
 - surfactants in, 362
 - surgical hand scrub antiseptics, 405, 406–407
 - temperature vs. hydration in, 352–353
 - thickeners in, 362
 - topical or cutaneous drug absorption through, 352, 354, 368

- transepidermal water loss (TEWL) ratios in skin, 367, 374
- two-way type cleansing creams, 372–374
- types of, 358–361
- vanishing creams, 360, 379–382
- viscosity of, 359, 381
- vitamins and, 368, 388
- wart removers, 412–413
- wash-off cleansing creams, 372–374
- water phase components of, 362
- water-in-oil (W/O) emulsions in, 361, 370, 371, 374, 376, 380
- waxes in, 370, 371
- wipe-off skin cleansing creams, 370–372
- Skin cleansers, 369–374, 485–500
- alkylamido alkylamines in, 493
- alkylated amino acids in, 493
- alkyl glucosides in, 494
- alkyl sulfates in, 488
- amine oxides in, 494
- amphoteric surfactants in, 493
- anionic surfactants in, 490–493
- antimicrobials in, 403–407, 495, 496
- attributes of successful formulations, 490
- betaines in, 494
- body shampoo, 497, 498
- bubble bath, 496
- chloroxylenol in, 496
- cleansing and moisturizing liquid, 499
- efficacy of, 495–496
- fatty acids in, 486
- foam or bubble bath, 496
- foaming action of, 490, 495
- formulation of, 489–490
- functionality of, 489 (*t*)
- glycerin in, 487, 498, 499
- hexachlorophene in, 495
- irritants in, 486–487, 488–489
- isethionates in, 493
- mildness, test for, 488–489
- moisturizing cleansing gel, 498
- nonionic surfactants in, 494
- pH levels of, 486
- phenol in, 495
- phosphates in, 493
- poloxamers in, 494
- prototype formulations for, 496–500
- quaternary surfactants in, 493–494
- rinsing ease in, 490, 495
- scrubbing cleanser, 498
- shower gel, 497, 499
- skin conditioning cleansing bar, 497
- soaps, 485–486, 492
- sulfates in, 492
- sulfonates in, 492–493
- superfatted soaps in, 487
- surfactants and, 486, 487
- synthetic surfactants in, 487–489
- towelette cleaners, 500
- triclocarban in, 496
- triclosan in, 496
- types of, 489–490
- water content of, 490
- Skin conditioning cleansing bar, 497
- Skin fresheners, 131, 1
- Skin protectant products, 143, 401–403
- Skin treatment products, 166
- Slip and rheological additive, 235
- Smectite (clay) in masks, 472, 473, 475–476 in nail polishes, 583
- Smudgeproof mascara, 564, 565
- Soap chamber test, 771
- Soaps, 330, 398–401, 485–486, 492
- acidification in, 401
- alkali in, 401
- as anionic surfactant, 491
- bar type, manufacture of, 401
- cosmetic use of, 399–400
- emulsions, 218, 227
- fatty acids in, 401, 486
- Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulation of, 398–401
- in foundation makeups, 524, 530, 533, 538
- glycerin in, 487
- household use of, 399
- as humectant, 270
- irritants in, 486–487
- liquid soaps, 400
- manufacture of, 401
- in mascaras, 565, 566
- medicated, 165
- oily skin treatments, 463–464
- pH levels of, 486
- preservatives, 292
- regulation of, 131, 144, 164, 398–401
- in shampoos, 602
- in shaving preparations, 505, 510
- in skin cleansers, 492
- in skin care, 370
- soap chamber test in, 771
- in solid dentifrice, 739
- superfatted (free fatty acid) soaps, 487
- as surfactant, 188, 198, 486, 487
- Sodium
- as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- in saliva, 91
- in skin care products, 356
- in nail strengtheners, 594
- Sodium alginate, 372
- Sodium benzoate, 749
- in mouthwashes, 749, 750, 751
- as preservative, 286, 287
- in shampoos, 622
- in skin cleansers, 497
- in toothpastes, 734
- Sodium bicarbonate, 730, 750
- Sodium bisulfite, 286, 287
- Sodium borate
- as preservative, 286, 287
- in skin care, 370, 371, 372
- Sodium bromate, 704, 706
- Sodium C14-16 olefin sulfonate, 497
- Sodium carbomer, 499

- Sodium carbonate, 713
- Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose
in masks, 481
in toothpastes, 732–733
- Sodium chloride, 701
in after-shave products, 516
in denture cleansers, 744
in foundation makeups, 536, 537
in shampoos, 623
in skin cleansers, 496, 497
- Sodium cocoglycerylether sulfonate, 499
- Sodium cocoyl glutamate, 455
- Sodium cocoyl isethionate, 374, 499
- Sodium cumene sulfonate, 629
- Sodium deceth-2 sulfate (SDES), 617
- Sodium dehydroacetate, 286, 287
- Sodium fluoride (*See* Fluoride)
- Sodium glutamate, in skin care, 381
- Sodium hyaluronate, as humectant, 364
- Sodium hydroxide
in dandruff products, 410
in depilatories, 721
in hair setting/styling products, 649
in hair straighteners, 709
in shaving preparations, 505
in temporary hair coloring, 675
- Sodium hydroxymethylglycinate, 286, 287, 706
- Sodium lactate
as humectant, 363
in skin cleansers, 497
- Sodium laureth sulfate
in dandruff products, 410
in shampoos, 622, 629
in shaving preparations, 504
in skin cleansers, 496, 498, 499
in skin care, 374
- Sodium lauroamphoacetate, 498, 525, 628
- Sodium lauroyl sarcosinate, 465, 499, 731
- Sodium lauroylalaninate, 622
- Sodium lauryl sulfate (SLS), 603, 705, 706
comedogenicity of, 463
in dandruff products, 410
in depilatories, 719, 720
as emulsifier, 219, 228
in mouthwashes, 751
in permanent hair colors, 689
in shampoos, 604, 616, 618
in toothpastes, 730–731, 737
- Sodium magnesium silicate, 733
- Sodium metaphosphate, 730
- Sodium methyl cocoyl taurate
in skin care, 375
in toothpastes, 731
- Sodium methylparaben, 508
- Sodium monofluorophosphate
toothpaste, 736, 737
- Sodium nitrite, 134
- Sodium oleate, as emulsifier, 219
- Sodium PCA
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 645
skin/in skin cleansers, 497
- Sodium perborate
in denture cleansers, 744
in nail bleaches, 592
in permanent waves, 704
- Sodium percarbonate
in denture cleansers, 744
in permanent waves, 704
- Sodium phosphate, 749
- Sodium pyrrolidone carboxylate, as humectant, 363, 365
- Sodium saccharin (*See* Saccharin)
- Sodium silicate
in denture cleansers, 744
in depilatories, 719
in toothpastes, 734–735
- Sodium stearate, 119
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 456
in skin cleansers, 497
in surfactants, 198
- Sodium sulfate
in cuticle removers, 589
in shampoos, 622
in skin cleansers, 499
- Sodium sulfite
in permanent hair colors, 689, 690
as preservative, 286, 287
- Sodium trideceth sulfate, 626
- Soft extracts of botanicals, 307
- Soft solid type antiperspirants and deodorants, 454–455
- Soft tissues of mouth, 92
- Softening lotions, 360, 383
- Solar keratoses, 28
- Solar lentigos (age spots/liverspots) skin, 22, 33, 34
- Solid dentifrice, 739
- Solid/stick type antiperspirants and deodorants, 451–453
- Solid–liquid interface and action of surfactants, 193–194
- Solids in emulsions, 225
- Solid suspension in liquids, 826–830
- Solubility parameter for sunscreens, 419
- Solubility parameter vs. HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Solubility vs. partition coefficient in emulsions, 220
- Solubilization of soils by shampoo, 612–613
- Solubilization, 897–898
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 655, 660, 661
in mouthwashes, 747
- Solvents
in emulsions, 211, 218–219
in hair setting/styling products, 637–638
in mouthwashes, 746
in nail polishes, 577–579
- Sorbic acid, as preservative, 286, 287, 295, 301, 312, 536
- Sorbitan esters
comedogenicity of, 463
in foundation makeups, 533
- Sorbitan palmitate, 219
- Sorbitan sesquioleate
as emulsifier, 219
in skin care, 375
- Sorbitan stearate, 219
- Sorbitan tristerate, 219

- Sorbitans
 in foundation makeups, 534
 in skin care, 372, 377
 in surfactants, 205
- Sorbitol, 310, 375
 in after-shave products, 518
 in hair setting/styling products, 664
 as humectant, 269
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
 in masks, 477, 480, 481
 microbial growth in, 280
 in mouthwashes, 747, 751
 in shampoos, 623
 in shaving preparations, 503, 506, 509, 513
 in skin cleansers, 500
 in skin care, 383
 in toothpastes, 731, 737
- Sores or ulcers in oral care, 92
- Soy sterol, 712
- Soybean oil, 221
- Soybeans, 311
- Spaces (interproximal) around teeth, 90
- Spermaceti, 372, 615
- Spermaceti wax shampoo, 615
- Sphingolipids in skin, 353
- Split ends in hair, 621, 664
- Splitting in nails (onychoschizia), 76
- Spoon-shaped nails (koilonychia), 76
- Spore-forming bacteria, as contaminant, 283
- Spray gels, 643–646
- Spreading coefficient and surfactants, 194
- Spritz styling sprays, 653
- Squalene, 13, 376–381, 385, 460, 461, 615
- Squametry testing, 774
- Squamous cell carcinoma, 28
- Stability, 889–899
 active ingredients and, 896–897
 aerosol containers, 347
 antioxidants, 247
 chemical changes and, 889
 emulsions, 211, 212, 215, 217, 218, 220, 222, 223, 224, 225–226, 226 (*t*), 229, 230–231
 formulas used in new product developments, 114
 foundation makeup, 535, 536
 hair colorants/dyes, 671
 hair spray, 662
 masks, 477, 478
 microbial action and, 889
 nail polish, 574–575
 oxidation, 898
 particle size and, 893–894
 predictive stability testing for emulsions, 891–896
 rheological additive, 235, 240, 242–243, 892–893
 shampoo, 632–633
 in shaving preparations, 502
 shelf life, 889, 890
 in skin care products, 359, 362
 solubilization, 897–898
 storage, 889
 temperature effects on, 890, 892, 896
 test protocols for, 894–896, 895 (*t*)
 testing for, 890
 toothpaste, 726
 transesterification, 897
 use of centrifugation, 895
 use of shaking, 895
- Staining dyes in lipsticks, 545
- Staining of tooth, 102–103
- Standard for Denatured Alcohol for Industrial Use, Japanese regulation of, 167
- Stannites as depilatories, 717
- Stannous fluoride toothpaste, 736, 737
- Staphylococcus*
 as contaminant, 283, 285
 as test of preservative efficacy, 297
 infection of ocular tissues and eyes, 85
- Starch
 in foundation makeups, 529, 538
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
 microbial growth in, 281
- State regulation of cosmetics in U.S., 146–147
- Static charge in hair, 50, 60–61
- Static reducing shampoo, 629
- Steam, effect on hair, 62
- Stearalkonium bentonite, 378
- Stearalkonium chloride
 in shampoos, 616–617
 in surfactants, 201
- Stearalkonium hectorite nail polish, 583
- Stearamine oxide shampoo, 607
- Steareth-10, comedogenicity of, 463
- Steareth-20, 623, 647
- Stearic acid
 in acne products, 466
 in foundation makeups, 533
 in mascaras, 564
 in shaving preparations, 502, 504, 505, 509, 510
 in skin cleansers, 498
 in skin care, 371, 372, 373, 374, 377, 379, 380, 382
 in surfactants, 198
- Steartrimonium chloride
 in hair setting/styling products, 640
 in nail strengtheners, 594
- Stearyl alcohol
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452
 as emulsifier, 221
 in emulsions, 220
 in hair straighteners, 711, 712
 in shampoos, 623
 in skin care, 375, 380
- Stearyl dimethyl benzyl ammonium chloride, 591
- Stearyl heptanoate, 509
- Stearyl octanoate, 509
- Sterilization procedures for equipment, 278–279
- Sterol, 6, 330, 353, 460, 461
- Sterol esters, 460, 461
- Stick foundations, 543
- Stick type antiperspirants and deodorants, 451–453
- Stick type sunscreens, 431
- Sting testing, 772–773
- Stinging, products that induce, 762 (*t*)
- Stokes' law and mobility of droplets in emulsions, 225
- Stop action cold wave lotion, 706
- Stratum basale, 4, 5

- Stratum corneum, 4, 6–10, 19, 262, 323–324, 351, 352, 367
disjunction/conjunction in skin, 10
- Stratum germinativum, 4, 5–9, 262
- Stratum granulosum, 4, 6, 9, 262
- Stratum lucidum, 6
- Stratum spinosum, 4, 5–6
- Strengtheners for nails, 582, 594–595
- Streptococcus*
as agent of dental caries in oral care, 98
as contaminant, 285
- Stress relaxation in hair, 55–56
- Stress-strain response in hair, 50–52, 50
- Stretching in hair, 51, 53
- Striations in nails (onychorrhexis), 75
- Stroma in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
- Strontium hydroxide depilatories, 719, 720, 721
- Styling creams, 649–651
- Styling gel with UV screen, 649
- Styling sticks, 652
- Subcutaneous tissue of skin, 3, 4, 351
- Subcutis or hypodermis layer of skin, 4
- Submicron emulsions, 212
- Submucosal lamina propria in ocular tissues and eye, 81
- Substance P, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Succinates, in hair setting/styling products, 659, 662
- Sucrose, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Sucrose behenate, 498
- Sucrose cocoate, 498, 534
- Sucrose dioleate, 219
- Sulfates, in skin cleansers, 492
- Sulfhydryls in hair, 41, 46, 49, 51, 53, 63, 66
- Sulfides
as depilatories, 716–717
in hair, 63
- Sulfites, in hair products, 63–65
- Sulfoacetates, as anionic surfactant, 491
- Sulfonated castor oil, in permanent waves, 700
- Sulfonated fatty acids, microbial growth in, 281
- Sulfonates, in skin cleansers, 492–493
- Sulfones, in permanent waves, 698
- Sulfonic acid
in shampoos, 606
in surfactants, 198–199
- Sulfosuccinates
in shampoos, 605
in surfactants, 199
- Sulfoxide, in permanent waves, 698
- Sulfur
in acne products, 465–466
as antioxidant, 255
in dandruff products, 408, 409, 411
in hair, 67
in masks, 477
volatile sulfur compounds in bad breath, neutralization of, 105
- Sulfuric acid esters
in surfactants, 199
in nail polishes, 575
in shampoos, 606
- Sulisobenzene in sunscreens, 417, 420, 423
- Sun protection factor (SPF) in sunscreens, 153, 416, 424, 425
- “Sunblock” (See Sunscreens)
- Sunburn and skin, 20, 23, 28–29
- Sunflower seed oil, 310, 516
- Sunlight
benefits, 27
detrimental effects, 28
effect on skin, 22–36
irradiation and color loss in hair, 68–69
penetration into skin, 24
- Sunscreens, 118, 142, 143, 165, 166, 415–435
absorption of UV radiations, 416–419
agents in, 416
aminobenzoic acid, 417, 420
avobenzene in, 417, 420
benzene ring and, 418
blockers of UV radiation in, 416, 419
botanicals as source of, 313
cationic lotion type, 434
cinxate in, 417, 420
dioxibenzene in, 417, 420–421
efficacy of, 427
emulsions type, 428–430
ensulizole in, 417, 422
E.U. regulation of, 155
evaluation of, 426–427
expiration dating, 425
FDA regulation of O.T.C. drugs, 416
formulations for, 427–434
gel type, 430
homosalate in, 417, 420, 421
labeling of, 424, 425
lip balm stick, 433
meradimate in, 417, 421
minimum erythema dose (MED) parameters for, 424
mousse/aerosol type, 431, 433
octinoxate in, 417, 420, 421
octisalate in, 417, 420, 421
octocrylene in, 417, 420, 421
oil type, 431, 433
oil-in-water emulsions, 428–429
ointment type, 431
oxybenzone in, 417, 420, 422
PABA in, 422, 425, 427
padimate O in, 417, 422
photostability testing of, 426
presentation of, 428
prototype formulation for, 433, 434 (*t*)
pump spray type, 431
safety of, 427
solubility parameter for, 419
stick type, 431
sulisobenzene in, 417, 420, 423
sun protection factor (SPF) in, 416, 424, 425
“sunblock,” 425
suntanning products vs., 425
titanium dioxide in, 416, 417, 419, 423

- trolamine salicylate in, 417, 420, 423
 ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 32
 U.S. regulation and, 145, 424–427
 UV absorbers in, 393
 water resistance of, 425, 432, 434
 water-in-oil emulsions, 428–429
 zinc oxide in, 416, 417, 419, 423–424
 Suntan accelerators, 136
 Suntan lotion, 131, 166, 425
 Superamides in shampoos, 606
 Superfatted (free fatty acid) soaps, 487
 Superoxide anion, 35, 249, 250, 256
 Suppository fills, 844–845
 Surface properties of hair, 57–61
 Surface tension and microbial growth, 282
 Surface tension and surfactants, 189, 194
 Surface treated pigments in foundation makeups, 529–530
 Surface-active agents and preservatives, 292
 Surfactants, 187–210, **187**, 486, 487, 689, 814–815
 acid hydrolysis by, 192
 acyl isethionates, 605
 acylated amino acids in, 197
 acylated peptides in, 197
 acylglyceride sulfonates in, 199
 adsorption in, 192, 193
 aggregation structures in, 191
 alcohol in, 199, 200, 203, 206
 alkanoic acids in, 197–198
 alkanolamides in, 195, 203–204
 alkoxylated amines in, 201
 alkyl ether sulfates in, 199, 200, 602–604
 alkyl glucosides in, 207, 494
 alkyl substituted amino acids in, 196
 alkyl sulfates in, 192, 199–200, 602–604
 alkylamido alkyl amines in, 196
 alkylamines in, 201
 alkylaryl sulfonates in, 198, 199
 alkylether sulfonates in, 199
 alkylimidazolines in, 201
 alkyl-substituted amino acids in, 609
 alpha-olefin sulfonates (AOS) in, 604
 amides in, 203
 amines in, 199, 201
 amine oxides in, 204, 494
 ammonium chloride in, 201
 amphiphilic content of, 208
 amphiphilic surfactants, 187, 188, 189, 493, 608–609
 amphoteric surfactants, 195, 196
 anionic surfactants, 191–192, 195, 196–200, 208, 490–483, 602–606
 antimicrobial action in, 193, 201–202
 associative structures in, 191
 benzalkonium chloride in, 201
 betaines in, 202, 608–609
 capillary flow and, 193–194
 carbohydrate esters in, 205–206
 carboxylic acids in, 197–198, 206
 categories of, 195
 cationic surfactants, 195, 200–202, 208, 292, 609
 cetyl alcohol in, 206
 chemistry of, 195–207
 chloroacetic acid in, 202
 cocamidopropyl in, 201
 cocamidopropylamine oxide, 204
 cream rinses using, 201
 critical micelle concentration (CMC) and, 189–189, 292, 603, 612–613
 dimethylamine in, 201
 dimonium chloride in, 201
 drug permeation action enhanced by, 208
 emulsions using, 192, 213, 216, 217 (*t*), 218, 223, 232
 entropic contributions to micellization, 191
 esteramides in, 204
 esters in, 204–206
 ethers in, 206–207
 ethoxylated alcohols in, 206
 ethoxylated carboxylic acids in, 206
 ethoxylated glycerides in, 205
 ethoxylated materials in, 202
 ethoxylated polypropylene oxide in, 206–207
 ethoxylated polysiloxanes in, 207
 ethoxylated PPG-5 in, 207
 ethylene oxide in, 201
 fatty acids in, 197, 198, 203
 fatty alkanolamides in, 606–607
 fatty glyceryl ether sulfonates, 606
 foam formation in, 194–195
 functions performed by, 188, 195
 Gibbs adsorption equation for, 188–189, 191, 193, 216
 glucosides in, 207
 glycerides in, 204–205
 glyceryl stearate in, 204
 Guerbet alcohol reaction in, 203
 hair colorants/dyes, 689
 hexadecanoic acid in, 198
 hydrogen bonding in, 202–203
 hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) and, 292
 hydrophilic content in, 187, 188, 189
 hydrophobic content in, 187, 188, 189, 191, 193
 inositol in, 200
 ionic polymers and, 193
 ionic surfactants and, 193
 irritation caused by, 191–192, 208–209
 isethionates in, 198
 isethionic acids in, 198
 Kritchevsky condensate and, 203
 lactylates in, 198

- Surfactants (*cont.*)
- lauramidopropyl
 - dimethylamine in, 202
 - lauryl alcohol in, 199
 - lime soaps, 204
 - linear alkylbenzene sulfonates (LAS), 605
 - liquid crystal surfactants, 192
 - macroemulsions using, 192
 - magnesium stearate in, 198
 - maleic anhydride in, 199
 - in masks, 477, 478
 - micellar catalysis in, 192
 - micelle formation by, 189–192, **190**
 - microbial growth in, 280, 281
 - mixed micelle formation in, 191–192
 - monoglyceride sulfate, 606
 - monoglycerides in, 204–205
 - in mouthwashes, 747
 - Newton's rings phenomenon and, 187
 - nonionic polymers and, 193
 - nonionic surfactants and, 191–193, 195, 202–208, 292, 494, 606–608
 - octadecanoic acid in, 198
 - olefin sulfonates in, 199
 - olive oil PEG-6 esters in, 205
 - Oxo alcohol in, 199, 203
 - packing parameters (P) in, 191
 - patch test performance data for, 207 (*t*)
 - phospholipids in, 200
 - phosphoric acid esters in, 200
 - phosphoric acid triesters in, 206
 - physical characteristics of, 189–195
 - poloxamers in, 207, 494
 - polyalkoxylated ether glycolates, 606
 - polyethoxylated materials in, 202–203
 - polyglyceryl esters in, 205
 - polyphosphoric acid in, 200
 - preformed polyethylene glycol (PEG) in, 206
 - preservatives and, 292, 294 (*t*)
 - propoxylate polysiloxanes in, 207
 - pyrrolidone in, 203
 - quaternaries in, 201–202, 493–494
 - rheological additive, 235
 - roll-back mechanism in, 611–612, **612**
 - saccharides in, 205–206
 - safe use of, 208–209
 - sarcosinates in, 197
 - sebum cleaning by, 614–616
 - in shaving preparations, 503–504, 506, 511
 - in skin care products, 362, 487–489
 - in soap, 188, 198, 292
 - sodium stearate in, 198
 - solid-liquid interface and action of, 193–194
 - solubilization of soils by, 612–613
 - sorbitan esters in, 205
 - spreading coefficient and, 194
 - stearalkonium chloride in, 201
 - stearic acid in, 198
 - sulfonic acids in, 198–199
 - sulfosuccinates in, 199, 605
 - sulfuric acid esters in, 199
 - surface tension and, 189, 194
 - surface-active agents and, 292
 - synthetic surfactants vs. soap in, 487–489
 - taurates in, 198
 - tetraalkylammonium salts in, 201
 - triglycerides in, 204–205
 - van der Waals interactions in, 193
 - wetting action of, 193–194
 - Young's equation for interfacial tension and, 194
 - Ziegler alcohol in, 199, 203
 - zinc laurate in, 198
- Surgical hand scrub antiseptics, 405, 406–407
- Suspension agents in antiperspirants and deodorants, 451
- Suspension of ingredients and rheological additives, 235
- Suspension of solids, 829–830
- Suspensions and rheological additive, 240
- Suspensions, 118–119
- Sweat (*See* Perspiration physiology)
- Sweat gland in skin, **4**, 11–12
- Sweet almond oil, 310
- Sweeteners
 - in mouthwashes, 747
 - in toothpastes, 734
- Synthetic lipid, 323
- T suppressor cells, UV-mediated immunosuppression and, 32
- Talc, 120, 527–528
 - in acne products, 464
 - in after-shave products, 520
 - in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452
 - in blushers, 561
 - as contamination source, 277
 - in eyeshadows, 570, 571
 - in foundation makeups, 524–525, 529, 531, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541, 542
 - in lipsticks, 547
 - in masks, 482
 - in nail white, 595–596
 - particle size of, 853
 - preservative action on, 294
 - in shaving preparations, 504, 514
- Tallow, 329–330
- Tallow alcohol, 499
- Tallowtrimonium chloride, 655
- Tamper-evident packaging and, 140
- Tangential flow, 802, **803**
- Tanning of skin, 23, 29–31, 35–36, 397–398, 415
- Tanning preparations, 131, 136
- Tartar deposits on teeth, 93, 96
- Tartaric acid, 294, 592
- Taurates in surfactants, 198
- TEA (*See* Triethanolamine)
- TEA laureth sulfate
 - in cuticle removers, 589
 - in shaving preparations, 509
 - in skin cleansers, 497
- TEA oleate, 497
- TEA soaps, 503
- TEA stearate
 - in nail strengtheners, 594
 - in shaving preparations, 505

- Tea tree oil, 312, 315
- Tear drainage in ocular tissues and eyes, 80, 81
- Tear layer of ocular tissues and eyes, 83
- Teeth (*See* Mouth, teeth, and oral care)
- Telangiectasias, 22, 33, 34
- Telogen effluvium, 44
- Telogen (resting) phase of growth in hair, 41–42, **42**
- Temperature and microbial growth, 282
- Temperature effect on antioxidants, 249
- emulsions, 213, 223, 224, 230, 231, 815–816
- moisture absorption by skin, 352–353
- permanent waves, 707
- rheological additive, 241
- stability, 890, 892, 896
- Temporary hair coloring, 670, 674–675
- Tensile properties of hair, 50–53
- Terminal differentiation in skin, 7–10, **8**
- Test batches for new product development, 125
- Testing, 125, 159, 161–162
- of aerosol container stability, 347
- of comedogenicity of acne products, 462, 463 (*t*)
- of contaminations, 279
- of deodorancy of antiperspirants and deodorants, 447
- of efficacy of skin moisturizers, 269
- of mildness of skin cleansers, 488–489
- of mouthwashes, 752–753
- of packaging, 886–888
- of permeation of packaging, 887–888
- of photostability testing of sunscreens, 426
- of preservatives efficacy, 297–298
- rheological additives, 242–243
- sweat measurement protocols for, 444–446
- of toothpastes, 739–742
- Tetraalkylammonium salts in surfactants, 201
- Tetrapotassium pyrophosphate toothpaste, 736
- Tetrasodium EDTA
- in cuticle removers, 591
- in hair setting/styling products, 665
- in nail strengtheners, 595
- in skin cleansers, 497, 499
- Tetrasodium pyrophosphate, 749–750
- in cuticle removers, 589
- in mouthwashes, 749–751
- in toothpastes, 736
- Thermal stability and rheological additive, 235
- Thermoforming, 881
- Thermoplastic resins packaging, 878
- Thermosetting resins, 880
- Thickeners
- botanicals as sources of, 311
- emulsions, 222, 229
- rheological additive, 235
- shampoo, 623
- shaving preparations, 505
- skin care products, 362
- toothpaste, 726, 732
- Thickness testing, 775
- Thinning of viscosity, 803
- Thiodiglycol depilatories, 721
- Thiodipropionic acid as antioxidants, 256
- Thioesters in hair, 46, 61, 63–64
- Thioglycerol, in depilatories, 720, 721
- Thioglycolates, in depilatories, 718, 720
- Thioglycolic acid, 705, 706
- as antioxidant, 256
- in depilatories, 721
- in permanent waves, 697, 702–704
- Thiolactic acid, in depilatories, 720, 721
- Thiols, 63, 65–66
- in permanent waves, 696–698
- Thiomalic acid, in depilatories, 721
- Thiosulfate, in hair, 64–65
- Thiourea, in permanent waves, 704
- Third molar (wisdom teeth), 88
- Thixotropic materials as rheological additive, 237–238, **237**, 242–243, 795
- Three-roll mills, 835–836, **836**
- Thyme oil, 315
- Thymol
- in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- in toothpastes, 737
- Titanium dioxide, 118, 120
- in after-shave products, 520
- in blushers, 561
- in eyeshadows, 571
- in hair setting/styling products, 665
- in hair straighteners, 712
- in lipsticks, 543, 545–547
- in makeups, 524, 525, 529, 531, 532, 533, 534, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542
- in mascaras, 563
- in masks, 482
- in nail white, 595–596
- particle size of, 853
- preservative action on, 294
- in sunscreens, 416, 417, 419, 423
- in toothpastes, 735
- Tocopherol, 306, 368
- as antioxidant, 252, 253, 312
- in shampoos, 623
- Tocopheryl acetate
- in lipsticks, 551
- in nail strengtheners, 595
- Toilet water, 131
- Toluene in nail polishes, 578–579, 584
- Tonics, 131, 636
- Toothbrushes and brushing, 742–743
- Toothpaste and dentifrices, 96, 104, 105, 119, 142, 144, 151, 164, 725–738
- abrasives in, 726, 728–730, 740–741
- active ingredients in, 727
- alumina, 730

- Toothpaste and dentifrices
(*cont.*)
aluminum hydroxide, 730
anticalculus agents in, 736
anticaries active ingredients, 735
antimicrobials in, 727, 736
bleaches in, 735
breath freshening properties of, 742
calcium carbonate, 729
calcium peroxide, 730
calcium pyrophosphate (CP), 729
carbomer, 733
carrageenan, 732
cellulose gum, 732
cetylpyridinium chloride, 737
chalk, 729
chlorhexidine, 737
clays, 733
cleaning properties of, 742
clinical trials for, 742
colorants for, 726, 735
corrosion inhibitors in, 734–735
demineralization by, 742
desensitizing agents in, 736
detergents in, 730–731
dicalcium phosphate
 anhydrous (DCP-A), 729
dicalcium phosphate dihydrate (DCP-D), 729
disodium pyrophosphate, 736
enzymes in, 737
flavoring in, 726, 733–734
fluoride, 729, 735–736
formulations for, 737
gellan gum, 733
gelling agents in, 726
glycerin in, 731
guar gum, 733
gums, 732, 733
humectants in, 726, 731–732
hydrated silica in, 728–729, 733
hydrogen peroxide in, 735
hydrogenated starch
 hydrolysate, 731
hydroxyethylcellulose, 733
hydroxypropyl guar, 733
hydroxypropyl
 methylcellulose, 733
 ingredients in, 726–737
 insoluble sodium phosphate (IMP), 730
 luster (gloss or polish), 741
 magnesium aluminum silicate, 733
 manufacture of, 737–738
 parabens in, 734
 performance, 740
 phenolics, 737
 poloxamer 407, 731
 polyethylene glycol, 732
 potassium acesulfame in, 734
 potassium sorbate in, 734
 preservatives in, 727, 734
 product dispensing parameters for, 727
 propylene glycol, 732
 remineralization by, 742
 requirements of, 725
 saccharin for, 734
 safety, 740
 sanguinaria extract, 737
 sodium benzoate in, 734
 sodium bicarbonate, 730
 sodium carboxymethyl cellulose (SCMS), 732–733
 sodium fluoride, 736
 sodium lauryl sarcosinate, 731
 sodium lauryl sulfoacetate, 731
 sodium laurylsulfate (SLS), 730–731
 sodium magnesium silicate, 733
 sodium metaphosphate, 730
 sodium methyl cocoyl taurate, 731
 sodium monofluorophosphate, 736
 sodium silicate in, 734–735
 sorbitol in, 731
 stability of, 726
 stannous fluoride, 736, 737
 sweeteners for, 734
 testing, 739–742, 739
 tetrapotassium pyrophosphate, 736
 tetrasodium pyrophosphate, 736
 thickening agents in, 726, 732
 titanium dioxide in, 735
toothbrushes and brushing, 742–743, 742
toothpastes, 725–738, 725
tragacanth gum, 732
tricalcium phosphate (TCP), 729
triclosan in, 736
urea peroxide in, 735
viscosity of, 727
water in, 731
xanthan gum, 733
xylytol, 732
zinc chloride in, 736
zinc citrate in, 736
Toothpowders, 738–739
Topical or cutaneous drug
 absorption through, 17, 22, 352, 354, 368
Torsion properties of hair, 50, 56–57
Tosylamide/formaldehyde resin (TSFR) nail polish, 577
Towelette cleaners, 500
Toxic compounds, 147
Toxic epidermal necrolysis, 17
Toxic reactions in ocular tissues and eyes, 84–85
Toxic shock syndrome (TSS) and preservatives, 285
Toxic substances, E.U.
 regulation of, 154
Toxicity of preservatives, 300–301
Trace metal content of, 49
Trade secret ingredients, 175–183
 U.S. regulation and, 139
Trade-Related Aspects of Intellect. Prop. Law (TRIPs), 177, 180
Tragacanth gum, 311
 as contamination source, 277
 in hair setting/styling products, 644
 in masks, 481
 rheological properties of, 244
 in toothpastes, 732
Transepidermal water loss (TEWL), 262–268, 324, 325, 367, 374, 763
 evaporimetry testing and, 775
 petrolatum and, 326–327
Transesterification, 897

- Transforming growth factor (TGF), 15
- Transglutaminase in skin, 9
- Transparency of cornea in eyes, 84
- Transparent emulsions, 212, 230
- Trauma to nails, 75
- Tretinoin, in acne products, 468
- Trialkanolamines, 151
- Tricalcium phosphate (TCP), in toothpastes, 729
- Trichorrhexis nodosa, 43
- Triclocarban in skin cleansers, 496
- Triclosan, 144–145
 - in acne products, 467
 - in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455, 456
 - in mouthwashes, 748
 - in over-the-counter remedies, 407
 - preventive of gingivitis in oral care, 100
 - in shaving preparations, 508
 - in skin cleansers, 496
 - in toothpastes, 736
- Tricotanyl PVP, 664
- Tridecyl trimellitate, 548
- Triethanolamine (TEA), 134, 138, 151, 377
 - in foundation makeups, 533
 - in mascaras, 564
 - in setting/styling products, 649
 - in skin cleansers, 498
 - in skin care, 371, 372, 374, 382
- Triethanolamine titanate, 699
- Triethanolamine-stearate (TEA), 533
- Triethylhexanoin, 375, 377
- Triglycerides, 329–460, 461
 - botanicals as source of, 308
 - in emulsions, 280
 - as lipid, 329–330, 329
 - in moisturizers, 264
 - in shampoos, 615
 - in skin, 13
 - in surfactants, 204–205, 204
- Trihydroxymethyl phosphine, 63
- Trihydroxystearin
 - as rheological additive, 243, 245
 - in skin cleansers, 498
- Triisocetyl citrate, 548
- Triisopropanolamine, 659
- Triisostearyl, 548
- Trilinoleate, 548
- Trimellitic anhydride, 577
- Trimer esters, 548
- Trimethylglycine, 608
- Tripalmitolein, 265
- Trisodium phosphate, 589
- Trolamine salicylate, in sunscreens, 417, 420, 423
- Trolox as antioxidant, 252
- Tryptase, in skin, 15
- Tryptophan in hair, 67, 68
- Tubes, collapsible, 881–882
- Tumor necrosis factor (TNF), 15, 29
- Tunicamycin, 397
- Turbine impellers, 787
- Turmeric, 316, 318
- Turnover point in hair, 51–53
- Two-in-one (shampoo/conditioner) products, 601, 602, 626
- Two-way type cleansing creams, 372–374
- Type I oxidative reactions, 247–249
- Type II oxidative reactions, 250–251
- Tyrosinase inhibitor, 397
- Tyrosine in hair, 47, 67, 68
- Ultrafine emulsions, 230
- Ultramarine blue, 529, 546, 571
- Ultrasonic homogenizer, 805, 823
- Ultrasonifiers in emulsions, 223
- Ultrastructure of nails, 73
- Ultraviolet filters, E.U.
 - regulation of, 151, 153
- Ultraviolet radiation, 11, 12, 15, 22–36, 310, 898
 - absorbers of, botanical sources of, 313
 - absorption of, 416–419
 - acne and, 461
 - actinic keratoses and, 33
 - action spectrum of light in skin, 24–25, 25
 - acute adverse effects of, 28
 - antioxidants, 247–248, 250, 256
 - atrophy of skin and, 33, 34
 - avobenzone UV absorber, 142
 - basal cell carcinoma, 28
 - beneficial effects of, 27
 - beta carotene in, 24
 - bilirubin in, 24
 - biological effectiveness of, 25–27
 - blockers of, 416, 419
 - carcinomas, 28
 - cataracts, 28
 - chromophores and, 23
 - chronic adverse effects of, 28
 - chronic effects on skin of exposure to, 33–34
 - coarsening of skin and, 33, 34
 - collagen and, 34
 - cutaneous malignant melanoma and, 33
 - dehydrocholesterol (pro-vitamin D3) in, 23
 - diseases of skin and, 35
 - distribution of solar UV radiations, 26 (t)
 - DNA absorption of, 28, 31, 33
 - elastin and, 34
 - energy constant (Planck's constant) of light, 24
 - erythema in, 23–29, 25
 - fibronectin and, 34
 - freckles and, 33, 34
 - hair and, 68–69
 - hemoglobin and, 23, 24
 - hyperkeratotic lesions and, 33
 - immunosuppression and, 28, 32
 - keratinocytes in, 29–31
 - laxness of skin and, 33, 34
 - lentigo maligna, 28
 - malignancies and, 28, 32–33
 - melanin in, 23, 29–31, 35–36
 - melanomas and, 28, 33
 - melanosomes in, 29–31
 - minimum erythema dose (MED) for, 26
 - neomelanogenesis in, 25
 - neoplasms in, 33, 34

- Ultraviolet radiation (*cont.*)
 nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH) in, 23
 nonmelanoma skin cancers (NMSC) and, 33
 ozone layer and, 26
 penetration of light into skin, 24
 photoaging and, 28, 33–34
 photoallergic responses, 28
 photocarcinogenesis and, 26, 32–33
 photodamage, 28
 photodermatoses and, 28, 35
 photosensitivity and, 28, 35
 pigmentation in, 29–31
 porphyrins in, 24
 properties of light, 23–24
 protection from, 27
 protective skin mechanisms vs., 35–36
 proteins and, 23
 proteoglycans and, 34
 range of UV radiations, A, B, C, 23
 reversal of photoaging and, 34
 skin types, and genetic response to UV, 31–32
 solar keratoses, 28
 solar lentigos (age spots/liverspots), 33, 34
 squamous cell carcinoma, 28
 styling gel with UV screen, 649
 sunburn and, 23, 28–29
 sunscreens (*See* Sunscreens)
 tanning and, 29–31, 35–36
 telangiectasias, 33, 34
 urocanic acid in, 24, 36
 UVB-induced pigmentation mechanism in, 397–398
 wavelengths of, 416–418
 wrinking and, 33, 34, 378
- Under-the-cup filling process for aerosols, 343
- Unit operations, 787–788
- United States cosmetic regulation
 acne products, 465
 adulteration in, 132–133
 advertising practices and, 146
 alpha hydroxy acid, 132, 138
 animal rights and, 129
 antiperspirants and deodorants, 441–442
 banned substances, 150
 bleaches, skin bleaches, 394–396
 burden of regulations on cosmetics in, 132, 134
 carcinogenic compounds, 147
 categories of products considered cosmetics, 131
 classification by intended use vs. chemical composition in, 132
 COLIPA, 129, 130
 color additives, 135–136
 cosmeceuticals, 149
 Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR) program, 134, 138
 Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA), 129, 138
 Cosmetics and Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 146
 country of origin in labeling, 140
 defining cosmetics vs. drugs, 130–131, 140–142, 393–394
 depilatories in, 134–135
 enforcement of, 130
 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and, 147
 estrogenic hormones, 135
 European Cosmetic Toiletry and Perfumery Association (COLIPA), 130
 European Union (E.U.) and, 129, 147–162
 excluded substances, 152
 expiration dating in labeling, 140
 Fair Packaging and Labeling Act (FPLA), 132
 FDA Modernization Act of 1997, 133
 Federal Trade Commission (FTC) and, 146
 Federal Trade Commission Act (FTCA) and, 146
 Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and, 130–138
 Food Drug and Cosmetic Act (FDCA), 130, 133
 foundation makeup, 523
 globalization of industry and, 129
 Good manufacturing practices (GMP) and related issues, 137, 160, 161
 hair dyes, 136, 686–687
 hair straighteners in, 134–135
 hazardous substances in, 134, 138
 Homeopathic Pharmacopoeia and, defining drugs, 131
 hypoallergenicity in labeling, 140
 identification of products in labeling, 139
 industry response/compliance with, 137–138
 ingredient listing in labeling, 139
 inspections, 133
 International Conference on Harmonization (ICH), 145–146
 International Fragrance Research Institute (IFRA), 138
 International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145
 JCIA, 129
 labeling, 130, 132, 138–140
 lipstick colorants, 544
 manufacturer name and address in labeling, 139
 microbial contaminants in, 136–137
 misbranded defined, 132–133
 nail products and, 135
 National Formulary and defining drugs, 131
 National Institutes of Health (NIH) and, 138
 National Toxicology Program (NTP) and, 138
 net contents (English/metric) in labeling, 139
 non-U.S. manufacturers and, 137
 over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, 140–144, 393–394
 packaging, 132

- permanent wave neutralizers
 and, 135
 photosensitization of products
 and, 130
 placental extracts, 135
 preservatives in, 136–137,
 295
 Product information package
 (PIP), 159–160
 products of specific concerns,
 134–135
 prohibited and hazardous
 substances in, 134, 138
 racial factors in, 129
 restricted substances, 151
 safety of finished products,
 155, 156
 safety factors in, 129, 130,
 134, 138, 765–766
 soaps, 398–401
 state regulation of cosmetics
 in U.S., 146–147
 sunscreen products, 416,
 424–427
 tamper-evident packaging and,
 140
 toxic compounds, 147
 toxicology, 154
 trade secret ingredients in, 139
 triclosan use, 407
 United States Pharmacopoeia
 and, defining drugs, 131
 violations of, 133
 vitamins, 135
 voluntary reporting program,
 134
 warnings on label, 139–140
 wrinkle removers, 141
 United States Pharmacopoeia
 (USP), 131, 297, 298
 Unsaturated vs. polyunsaturated
 materials in antioxidants,
 258
 Urea, 705, 706
 in hair straighteners, 713
 as humectant, 365
 as hygroscopic agent, 267
 as natural moisturizing factor
 (NMF), 267
 in toothpastes, 735
 in skin cleansers, 497
 in skin care, 384
 Uric acid, as natural
 moisturizing factor (NMF),
 267
 Urocanic acid in ultraviolet
 (UV) radiation, 24, 36
 UV absorbers in 623–624, 641
 VA hair setting/styling products,
 660
 Vacuum processing of lipsticks,
 557
 Valves for aerosols, 336–338,
 337
 Van der Waals interactions, 119,
 193, 217, 617
 Vanishing creams, 360, 379–382
 Vascular cell adhesion molecules
 (VCAM), ultraviolet (UV)
 radiation and, 29
 Vasculature of skin, 19, 22
 Vater-Pacini corpuscles in skin,
 19
 Vegetable hair dyes, 691
 Vegetable oils
 in emulsions, 211
 in shampoos, 623
 in shaving preparations, 505
 Vellus hair, 41
 Velocity head, 807, **808**
 Vessel shape on mixing, 810
 Vinyl acetate, 577, 619
 Vinyl chloride, 134, 577
 Vinyl esters, 577
 Vinyl neodecanoate, 660
 Vinyl or peelable facial masks,
 480, **481**
 Violations of U.S. regulations,
 133
 Visco-elastic properties in
 rheological additives, 238
 Viscosity, 792, 793, 794, 795,
 810–811
 common substances, 236 (*t*)
 of emulsions, 117, 118, 222,
 225, 228, 229, 231
 of hair setting/styling
 products, 646–650
 of skin care products, 359
 low-viscosity products, filling
 processes for, 837–838
 of masks, 478
 of mouthwashes, 745
 of nail polishes, 576, 579, 582
 rheological additives and, 235,
 236, 238–239
 of shampoos, 601, 609,
 622–623
 of toothpastes, 727
 Vitamin A, 368, 378
 in acne products, 468
 in hair setting/styling
 products, 641
 in skin care, 379
 Vitamin B, 368, 641
 Vitamin C in collagen synthesis,
 18
 Vitamin D, 368
 from exposure to sunlight, 27
 in skin care, 384
 Vitamin E, 252, 384, 368, 641
 Vitamins
 in hair setting/styling
 products, 641
 in nail polishes, 582
 regulation of, 135
 in shampoos, 601–602
 in skin care products, 368,
 388
 topical application of skin,
 368
 Vitreous body of eyes, **80**
 Volatile organic compounds
 (VOC), 507, 510, 515, 655,
 657
 Volatile sulfur compounds in
 bad breath, neutralization
 of, 105
 Voluntary reporting program,
 U.S. regulation and, 134
 Warm fills, 841–843
 Warnings on label, 139–140,
 157
 Wart removers, 412–413
 Wash-off cleansing creams,
 372–374
 Water, 116, 117, 121, 378
 as contamination source, 277
 effect on hair, 62
 microbial growth in, 280, 281
 rheological properties of, 236
 Water absorption by hair, **54**, 55
 Water absorption by skin, 352
 Water loss from skin, 9, 10, 16,
 17, 261–263, 351–352

- Water phase components of in skin care products, 362
- Water-based foundation makeup, 526, 530, 535-538
- Water-based mascara, 565
- Water-based systems in rheological additives, 243, 244
- Water-in-oil (W/O) emulsions, 212, 216, 220, 222, 228-229, **229**, 280, 361, 535-538, 565
- in skin care products, 370, 371, 374, 376, 380
- in sunscreens, 428-429
- Water-in-oil-in-water (W/O/W) emulsions, 213, 382, 384
- Water-in-silicone emulsion, 453, 535-536, 824-825
- Waterproof mascara, 564, 565
- Wavelengths of UV radiations, 416-418
- Wax esters, 460, 461
- in skin, 13
- Wax type facial masks, 472, 478-479
- Waxes, 118, 119
- botanicals as source of, 308
- as contamination source, 277
- in depilatories, 713-714
- in foundation makeups, 530, 533, 542, 543
- in hair setting/styling products, 648
- in lipsticks, 548, 549, 557
- in mascaras, 565, 566
- in masks, 478
- as rheological additive, 235, 241, 242
- in skin care products, 370, 371
- Wet continuous process, 865-870, **866**
- Wet earth treatments as masks, 471
- Wet mixing systems, 801-802
- Wet-set hair products, 642-643
- Wettability of hair, 50, 54, 57-58, **58**, 68
- Wetting action of surfactants, 193-194
- Wetting agents
- in foundation makeups, 535
- in hair setting/styling products, 639
- Wheat germ glycerides, 452
- Wheat germ oil, 310
- Wheat gluten, 306
- White petrolatum, in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
- Whitening of nails, 76
- Whitening of tooth, 103
- Wipe-off skin cleansing creams, 370-372
- Wisdom teeth, 88
- Witch hazel, 315, 320, 412
- in after-shave products, 516, 517
- in shaving preparations, 513
- Wood powder, 306
- Worldwide patent system, 177-178
- Wormwood, 317
- Wrinkle removers, 141
- Wrinkles in skin, 21-22, 33, 34, 262, 377-379
- Written product profiles in new product developments, 122, 126-127
- Xanthan gum
- in acne products, 467
- in after-shave products, 518
- in emulsions, 226
- in foundation makeups, 535
- in hair setting/styling products, 644
- in masks, 477, 481
- in mouthwashes, 750, 751
- rheological properties of, 244
- in shaving preparations, 503, 505
- in toothpastes, 733
- Xanthines as antioxidants, 256
- Xanthophyll, 318
- Xerostomia, 105-106
- Xylene nail polish, 578
- Xylitol
- as hygroscopic agent, 267
- in mouthwashes, 747
- in toothpastes, 732
- Yeast infections of nails, 75
- Yeasts as contaminant, 274-276, 283, 284
- Yellow nail syndrome in nails, 74, 77
- Yield point of hair, 51, 53
- Yield values in rheological additives, 236
- Young-Dupre equation and wettability of hair, 58
- Young's equation for interfacial tension and surfactants, 194
- Ziegler alcohol for surfactants, 199, 203
- Zinc, in hair, 49
- Zinc acetate, 402, 403, 594
- Zinc carbonate, 402, 403
- Zinc chloride, 736
- Zinc citrate, 736
- Zinc laurate, 198
- Zinc oxide, 118
- in after-shave products, 520
- in foundation makeups, 524, 525-526, 538, 542
- in masks, 482
- in nail white, 595-596
- in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
- preservative action on, 294
- in shaving preparations, 514
- in sunscreens, 416, 417, 419, 423-424
- Zinc peroxide, 592
- Zinc phenosulfonate, 513
- Zinc pyrithione, 408, 409, 410, 411
- Zinc salts
- in after-shave products, 517
- in mouthwashes, 749
- in toothpastes and oral care, 96
- Zinc stearate
- in eyeshadows, 570
- in foundation makeups, 538, 539
- in mascaras, 565, 566
- particle size, 853
- in shaving preparations, 514
- Zirconium chloride, 594
- Zirconium salt, 134, 699
- Zwitterionic betaine, 311